## Contents

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Introduction</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>In brief</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Keys, doors and windows</td>
<td>23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Seats, restraints</td>
<td>40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Storage</td>
<td>62</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Instruments and controls</td>
<td>102</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lighting</td>
<td>140</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Climate control</td>
<td>153</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Driving and operating</td>
<td>162</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vehicle care</td>
<td>223</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Service and maintenance</td>
<td>283</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Technical data</td>
<td>286</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Customer information</td>
<td>319</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Index</td>
<td>324</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Introduction

Fuel

- Designation
- Grade
- Viscosity

Engine oil

Tyre pressure

- Tyre size
- Summer tyres
- Winter tyres
- Front
- Rear

Weights

- Gross vehicle weight rating
- Kerb weight, basic model
- Loading
Vehicle specific data
Please enter your vehicle's data on the previous page to keep it easily accessible. This information is available in the sections "Service and maintenance" and "Technical data" as well as on the identification plate.

Introduction
Your vehicle is a designed combination of advanced technology, safety, environmental friendliness and economy.

This Owner's Manual provides you with all the necessary information to enable you to drive your vehicle safely and efficiently.

Make sure your passengers are aware of the possible risk of accident and injury which may result from improper use of the vehicle.

You must always comply with the specific laws and regulations of the country that you are in. These laws may differ from the information in this Owner's Manual.

When this Owner's Manual refers to a workshop visit, we recommend your Opel Service Partner. For gas vehicles we recommend an Opel Repairer authorised for servicing gas vehicles.

All Opel Service Partners provide first-class service at reasonable prices. Experienced mechanics trained by Opel work according to specific Opel instructions.

The customer literature pack should always be kept ready to hand in the vehicle.

Using this manual
- This manual describes all options and features available for this model. Certain descriptions, including those for display and menu functions, may not apply to your vehicle due to model variant, country specifications, special equipment or accessories.
- The "In brief" section will give you an initial overview.
- The table of contents at the beginning of this manual and within each section shows where the information is located.
- The index will enable you to search for specific information.
- This Owner's Manual depicts left-hand drive vehicles. Operation is similar for right-hand drive vehicles.
- The Owner's Manual uses the factory engine designations. The corresponding sales designations can be found in the section "Technical data".
- Directional data, e.g. left or right, or front or back, always relate to the direction of travel.
- The vehicle display screens may not support your specific language.
- Display messages and interior labelling are written in bold letters.
## Danger, Warnings and Cautions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>△ Danger</th>
<th>△ Warning</th>
<th>Caution</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Text marked △ Danger provides information on risk of fatal injury. Disregarding this information may endanger life.</td>
<td>Text marked △ Warning provides information on risk of accident or injury. Disregarding this information may lead to injury.</td>
<td>Text marked Caution provides information on possible damage to the vehicle. Disregarding this information may lead to vehicle damage.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Symbols

Page references are indicated with ✤. ✤ means "see page".

We wish you many hours of pleasurable driving.

Adam Opel AG
### In brief

#### Initial drive information

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Vehicle unlocking</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Press button 🗝️ to unlock the doors and load compartment. Open the doors by pulling the handles.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>5-door hatchback, Sports tourer</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>To open the tailgate, push the touchpad switch below the brand emblem.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
3-door hatchback

To open the tailgate, push the brand emblem at the bottom half.
Press button \(\mathcal{E}\) on remote control to unlock and open the tailgate. The doors remain locked.

4-door notchback

Press button \(\mathcal{E}\) on the remote control for at least 2 seconds; the boot lid opens slightly.
Radio remote control \(\mathcal{D}\) 24, Central locking system \(\mathcal{D}\) 25, Load compartment \(\mathcal{D}\) 28.

Seat adjustment

Seat positioning

Pull handle, slide seat, release handle.
Seat position \(\mathcal{D}\) 42, Seat adjustment \(\mathcal{D}\) 42.

Danger

Do not sit nearer than 25 cm from the steering wheel, to permit safe airbag deployment.
**Seat backrests**

Pull lever, adjust inclination and release lever. Allow the seat to engage audibly.
Seat position 42, Seat adjustment 42, Seat folding 45.

**Seat height**

Lever pumping motion
up = seat higher
down = seat lower

Seat position 42, Seat adjustment 42.

**Seat inclination**

Lever pumping motion
up = front end higher
down = front end lower

Seat position 42, Seat adjustment 42.
Power seat adjustment

Operate switch 1:
- forwards/backwards = length adjustment
- upwards/downwards = height adjustment
- upwards/downwards at front = inclination adjustment

Operate switch 2:
- forwards/backwards at the top = backrest adjustment

Power seat adjustment 46, Seat folding 45.

Head restraint adjustment

Press release button, adjust height, engage.
Head restraints 40.
Seat belt

Pull out the seat belt and engage in belt buckle. The seat belt must not be twisted and must fit close against the body. The backrest must not be tilted back too far (maximum approx. 25 °). To release belt, press red button on belt buckle.

Seat position  42, Seat belts  49, Airbag system  52.

Mirror adjustment

Interior mirror

To reduce dazzle, adjust the lever on the underside of the mirror housing.

Interior mirror  34, Automatic anti-dazzle interior mirror  35.

Exterior mirrors

Select the relevant exterior mirror and adjust it.
Convex exterior mirrors  33, Electric adjustment  33, Folding exterior mirrors  33, Heated exterior mirrors  34.
Steering wheel adjustment

Unlock the lever, adjust the steering wheel, then engage the lever and ensure it is fully locked.
Do not adjust the steering wheel unless the vehicle is stationary and the steering wheel lock has been released.

Airbag system 52, Ignition positions 163.
In brief

Instrument panel overview
| 1  | Power windows          | 35 |
| 2  | Exterior mirrors       | 33 |
| 3  | Cruise control         | 181 |
|    | Speed limiter          | 183 |
|    | Adaptive cruise control| 184 |
|    | Forward collision alert| 191 |
| 4  | Side air vents         | 160 |
| 5  | Turn and lane-change signals, headlight flash, low beam and high beam, high beam assist | 147 |
|    | Exit lighting          | 151 |
|    | Parking lights         | 148 |
|    | Buttons for Driver Information Centre | 121 |
| 6  | Instruments            | 110 |
| 7  | Steering wheel controls| 102 |
| 8  | Driver Information Centre | 121 |
| 9  | Windscreen wiper, windscreen washer system, headlight washer system, rear wiper, rear washer system | 104 |
| 10 | Sport mode             | 179 |
|    | Central locking system | 25 |
|    | Fuel selector          | 111 |
|    | Hazard warning flashers| 147 |
|    | Control indicator for airbag deactivation | 115 |
|    | Control indicator for front passenger seat belt | 115 |
|    | Tour mode              | 179 |
| 11 | Info-Display           | 126 |
| 12 | Anti-theft alarm system status LED | 31 |
| 13 | Centre air vents       | 160 |
| 14 | Glovebox               | 62 |
| 15 | Traction Control system| 176 |
|    | Electronic Stability Control | 177 |
|    | Parking assist         | 197 |
|    | Advanced parking assist| 200 |
|    | Lane departure warning | 209 |
| 16 | Sport mode             | 179 |
|    | Central locking system | 25 |
|    | Fuel selector          | 111 |
|    | Hazard warning flashers| 147 |
|    | Control indicator for airbag deactivation | 115 |
|    | Control indicator for front passenger seat belt | 115 |
|    | Tour mode              | 179 |
|    | Info-Display           | 126 |
|    | Anti-theft alarm system status LED | 31 |
|    | Centre air vents       | 160 |
|    | Glovebox               | 62 |
|    | Traction Control system| 176 |
|    | Electronic Stability Control | 177 |
|    | Parking assist         | 197 |
|    | Advanced parking assist| 200 |
|    | Lane departure warning | 209 |
| 17 | Climate control system | 153 |
| 18 | AUX input, USB input, SD card slot | 12 |
| 19 | Power outlet           | 108 |
| 20 | Selector lever, manual transmission | 173 |
| 21 | Electric parking brake | 174 |
| 22 | Ignition switch with steering wheel lock | 163 |
| 23 | Horn                   | 103 |
| 24 | Driver airbag          | 52 |
| 25 | Bonnet release lever   | 225 |
| 26 | Storage compartment, fuse box | 254 |
| 27 | Steering wheel adjustment | 102 |
| 28 | Headlight range adjustment | 142 |
| 29 | Front fog lights       | 147 |
In brief

Rear fog light ...................... 148
Instrument illumination ....... 149
Exterior lighting

Turn light switch:
0 = lights off
♀♀ = sidelights
<ID> = low beam

Automatic light control
AUTO = automatic light control: exterior lighting is switched on and off automatically
♀ = activation or deactivation of the automatic light control
♀♀ = sidelights
>ID> = low beam

Fog lights
Press light switch:
♀ID> = front fog lights
♀♀♂ = rear fog light

Headlight flash, high beam and low beam

headlight flash = pull lever
high beam = push lever
low beam = push or pull lever

Automatic light control ⎞ 141, High beam ⎟ 141, Headlight flash ⎟ 142, Adaptive forward lighting ⎟ 143.
In brief

**Turn and lane-change signals**

lever up = right turn signal
lever down = left turn signal

Turn and lane-change signals 147, Parking lights 148.

**Hazard warning flashers**

Operated with the button.
Hazard warning flashers 147.

**Horn**

Press  
Washer and wiper systems

Windscreen wiper

2 = fast  
1 = slow  
= interval wiping or automatic wiping with rain sensor  
= off

For a single wipe when the windscreen wiper is off, press the lever down.

Windscreen wiper 104, Wiper blade replacement 230.

Windscreen and headlight washer

Pull lever.

Windscreen and headlight washer system 104, Washer fluid 228.

Rear window wiper

Press the rocker switch to activate the rear window wiper:

upper switch = continuous operation  
lower switch = intermittent operation  
middle position = off
Rear window washer

Push lever.
Washer fluid is sprayed on the rear window and the wiper wipes a few times.
Rear window wiper/washer 106.

Climate control

Heated rear window, heated exterior mirrors

The heating is operated by pressing the button.
Heated rear window 37.

Demisting and defrosting the windows

Press button .
Set the temperature control to the highest level.
Cooling  on.
Heated rear window  on.
Climate control system  153.
Transmission

Manual transmission

Reverse: with the vehicle stationary, wait 3 seconds after depressing clutch pedal and then press the release button on the selector lever and engage the gear.

If the gear does not engage, set the lever to neutral, release the clutch pedal and depress again; then repeat gear selection.

Manual transmission  173.

Automatic transmission

P = park
R = reverse
N = neutral
D = drive

Manual mode: move selector lever from D to the left.

\[ \text{ + = higher gear} \]
\[ \text{ - = lower gear} \]

The selector lever can only be moved out of P when the ignition is on and the brake pedal is applied. To engage P or R, press the release button.

Automatic transmission  169.

Starting off

Check before starting off

- Tyre pressure and condition  259,  308.
- Engine oil level and fluid levels  225.
- All windows, mirrors, exterior lighting and number plates are free from dirt, snow and ice and are operational.
- Proper position of mirrors, seats, and seat belts  33,  42,  50.
- Brake function at low speed, particularly if the brakes are wet.
Starting the engine

- Turn key to position 1
- move the steering wheel slightly to release the steering wheel lock
- operate clutch and brake
- automatic transmission in P or N
- do not operate accelerator pedal
- diesel engines: turn the key to position 2 for preheating and wait until control indicator ! extinguishes
- turn key to position 3 and release

Starting the engine ◙ 163.

Stop-start system

If the vehicle is at a low speed or at a standstill and certain conditions are fulfilled, activate an Autostop as follows:

- Depress the clutch pedal
- set the lever in neutral
- release the clutch pedal

An Autostop is indicated by the needle at the AUTOSTOP position in the tachometer.

To restart the engine, depress the clutch pedal again.

Stop-start system ◙ 165.

Parking

- Always apply the parking brake. Activate the manual parking brake without pressing the release button. Apply as firmly as possible on a downhill slope or uphill slope. Depress foot brake at the same time to reduce operating force.

For vehicles with electric parking brake, pull switch ◙ for approx. one second.

- Switch off the engine. Turn the ignition key to position 0 and remove it. Turn the steering wheel until the steering wheel lock is felt to engage.

For vehicles with automatic transmission, the key can only be removed when the selector lever is in the P position.

- If the vehicle is on a level surface or uphill slope, engage first gear or set the selector lever to P before switching off the ignition. On an uphill slope, turn the front wheels away from the kerb.
If the vehicle is on a downhill slope, engage reverse gear or set the selector lever to P before switching off the ignition. Turn the front wheels towards the kerb.

- Lock the vehicle with button e on the radio remote control.
  Activate the anti-theft alarm system 31.
- Do not park the vehicle on an easily ignitable surface. The high temperature of the exhaust system could ignite the surface.
- Close the windows and the sunroof.
- The engine cooling fans may run after the engine has been switched off 224.
- After running at high engine speeds or with high engine loads, operate the engine briefly at a low load or run in neutral for approx. 30 seconds before switching off, in order to protect the turbocharger.

Keys, locks 23, Laying the vehicle up for a long period of time 223.
Keys, doors and windows

Keys, locks ................................... 23
Doors ........................................... 28
Vehicle security ............................ 30
Exterior mirrors ............................ 33
Interior mirrors ............................. 34
Windows ...................................... 35
Roof ............................................. 38

Keys, locks

Keys

Replacement keys
The key number is specified in the Car Pass or on a detachable tag.
The key number must be quoted when ordering replacement keys as it is a component of the immobiliser system.

Locks 279.
The code number of the key adapter for the locking wheel nuts is specified on a card. It must be quoted when ordering a replacement key adapter.

Wheel changing 267.

Car Pass
The Car Pass contains security related vehicle data and should therefore be kept in a safe place.

When the vehicle is taken to a workshop, this vehicle data is needed in order to perform certain operations.
Radio remote control

Handle with care, protect from moisture and high temperatures and avoid unnecessary operation.

**Fault**
If the central locking system cannot be operated with the radio remote control, it may be due to the following:
- Range exceeded
- Battery voltage too low
- Frequent, repeated operation of the radio remote control while not in range, which will require re-synchronisation
- Overload of the central locking system by operating at frequent intervals, the power supply is interrupted for a short time
- Interference from higher-power radio waves from other sources

Unlocking  25.

**Basic settings**
Some settings can be changed in the menu **Settings** in the Info-Display. Vehicle personalisation  134.

Radio remote control battery replacement
Replace the battery as soon as the range reduces.

Batteries do not belong in household waste. They must be disposed of at an appropriate recycling collection point.

Used to operate:
- Central locking system
- Anti-theft locking system
- Anti-theft alarm system
- Power windows
- Sunroof

The radio remote control has a range of approx. 20 metres. It can be restricted by external influences. The hazard warning flashers confirm operation.
Key with foldaway key section

Extend the key and open the unit. Replace the battery (battery type CR 2032), paying attention to the installation position. Close the unit and synchronise.

Radio remote control synchronisation
After replacing the battery, unlock the door with the key in the driver's door lock. The radio remote control is synchronised by switching on the ignition.

Memorised settings
Whenever the key is removed from the ignition switch, the following settings are automatically memorised by the key:
- Lighting
- Infotainment system
- Central locking system
- Sport mode settings
- Comfort settings

The saved settings are automatically used the next time the memorised key is inserted into the ignition switch and turned to position 1 163.

A precondition is that Personalization by driver is activated in the personal settings of the Graphic-Info-Display. This must be set for each key used. On vehicles equipped with Colour-Info-Display, the personalisation is permanently activated.

Vehicle personalisation 134.

Central locking system
Unlocks and locks doors, load compartment and fuel filler flap.

A pull on an interior door handle unlocks the respective door. Pulling the handle once more opens the door.

Note
In the event of an accident in which airbags or belt pretensioners are deployed, the vehicle is automatically unlocked.

Note
A short time after unlocking with the remote control the doors are locked automatically if no door has been opened.
Unlocking

Press button 🗝.

Two settings are selectable:

- To unlock only the driver's door, load compartment and fuel filler flap, press button 🗝 once. To unlock all doors, press button 🗝 twice or

- press button 🗝 once to unlock all doors, load compartment and fuel filler flap

The setting can be changed in the menu Settings in the Info-Display. Vehicle personalisation 🗝 134.

The setting can be saved for the key being used. Memorised settings 🗝 25.

Unlocking and opening the tailgate 🗝 28.

Locking

Close doors, load compartment and fuel filler flap.

Press button 🗝.

If the driver's door is not closed properly, the central locking system will not work.

Central locking buttons

Locks or unlocks all doors, the load compartment and fuel filler flap from inside the passenger compartment.

Press the 🗝 button to lock.
Press the 🗝 button to unlock.
Fault in radio remote control system

Unlocking
Manually unlock the driver's door by turning the key in the lock. Switch on the ignition and press the central locking button to unlock the other doors, load compartment and fuel filler flap. By switching on the ignition, the anti-theft locking system is deactivated.

Locking
Manually lock the driver's door by turning the key in the lock.

Fault in central locking system

Unlocking
Manually unlock the driver's door by turning the key in the lock. The other doors can be opened by pulling the interior handle twice. The load compartment and fuel filler flap cannot be opened. To deactivate the anti-theft locking system, switch on the ignition.

Locking
Push inside locking knob of all doors except driver's door. Then close the driver's door and lock it from the outside with the key. The fuel filler flap and tailgate cannot be locked.

Automatic locking
This security feature can be configured to automatically lock all doors, load compartment and fuel filler flap as soon as a certain speed is exceeded.

Additionally it is configurable to unlock the driver's door or all doors after the ignition is switched off and the ignition key is removed (manual transmission) or the selector lever is moved to P position (automatic transmission).

Settings can be changed in the menu Settings in the Info-Display. Vehicle personalisation.

The settings can be saved for the key being used.

Child locks
## Warning

Use the child locks whenever children are occupying the rear seats.

Using a key or suitable screwdriver, turn the child lock in the rear door to the horizontal position. The door cannot be opened from the inside.

To deactivate, turn the child lock to the vertical position.

---

### Doors

### Load compartment

### Tailgate

#### Opening

**5-door hatchback**

After unlocking, push the touchpad switch below the brand emblem and open the tailgate.

**3-door hatchback**

Press button 🚗 on radio remote control or push the brand emblem at the bottom half to unlock and open the tailgate.
Pressing button opens the tailgate even if the doors are locked.

**Sports tourer**
After unlocking, push the touchpad switch under the tailgate moulding and open the tailgate.

Central locking system 25.

To unlock the boot lid, press button on the remote control for at least 2 seconds, or, to open from the inside, press button in the centre console; the boot lid is opened slightly.

With the doors centrally locked, the boot lid cannot be opened with button in the centre console.
Closing

Use one of the interior handles. Do not push the touchpad switch or the emblem whilst closing as this will unlock the tailgate again.

Central locking system ➔ 25.

General hints for operating tailgate

Danger

Do not drive with the tailgate open or ajar, e.g. when transporting bulky objects, since toxic exhaust gases, which cannot be seen or smelled, could enter the vehicle. This can cause unconsciousness and even death.

Caution

Before opening the tailgate check overhead obstructions, such as a garage door, to avoid damage to the tailgate. Always check the moving area above and behind the tailgate.

Note

The installation of certain heavy accessories onto the tailgate may affect its ability to remain open.

Vehicle security

Anti-theft locking system

Warning

Do not use the system if there are people in the vehicle! The doors cannot be unlocked from the inside.

The system deadlocks all the doors. All doors must be closed otherwise the system cannot be activated.

If the ignition was on, the driver's door must be opened and closed once so that the vehicle can be secured.

Unlocking the vehicle disables the mechanical anti-theft locking system. This is not possible with the central locking button.
### Activating

Press 🛡️ on the radio remote control twice within 15 seconds.

### Anti-theft alarm system

The anti-theft alarm system is combined with the anti-theft locking system.

It monitors:
- Doors, tailgate, bonnet
- Passenger compartment including adjoining load compartment
- Vehicle inclination, e.g. if it is raised
- Ignition

### Activation

- Self-activated 30 seconds after locking the vehicle (initialisation of the system)
- Directly by pressing 🛡️ on the radio remote control once more after locking

**Note**
Changes to the vehicle interior such as the use of seat covers, and open windows or sunroof, could impair the function of passenger compartment monitoring.

### Activation without monitoring of passenger compartment and vehicle inclination

Switch off the monitoring of passenger compartment and vehicle inclination when animals are being left in the vehicle, because of high volume ultrasonic signals or movements triggering the alarm. Also switch off when the vehicle is on a ferry or train.
1. Close tailgate, bonnet, windows and sunroof.
2. Press button 🛡️. LED in the button 🛡️ illuminates for a maximum of 10 minutes.
3. Close doors.
4. Activate the anti-theft alarm system.

Status message is displayed in the Driver Information Centre.

### Status LED

Status during the first 30 seconds of anti-theft alarm system activation:
- LED illuminates = test, arming delay.
- LED flashes quickly = doors, tailgate or bonnet not completely closed, or system fault.

Status after system is armed:
- LED flashes slowly = system is armed.

Seek the assistance of a workshop in the event of faults.

### Deactivation

Unlocking the vehicle deactivates the anti-theft alarm system.

### Alarm

When triggered, the alarm sounds via a separate battery-backed power sounder, and the hazard warning lights flash simultaneously. The number and duration of alarm signals are stipulated by legislation.

The alarm can be silenced by pressing any button on the radio remote control or by switching on the ignition.

The anti-theft alarm system can be deactivated only by pressing button 🛡️ or by switching on the ignition.

A triggered alarm, which has not been interrupted by the driver, will be indicated by the hazard warning lights. They will flash quickly three times the next time the vehicle is unlocked with the radio remote control. Additionally a warning message or a warning code is displayed in the Driver Information Centre after switching on the ignition.

### Immobiliser

The system is part of the ignition switch and checks whether the vehicle is allowed to be started with the key being used.

The immobiliser is activated automatically after the key has been removed from the ignition switch.
If the control indicator \( \text{\textbullet} \) flashes when the ignition is on, there is a fault in the system; the engine cannot be started. Switch off the ignition and repeat the start attempt.

If the control indicator continues flashing, attempt to start the engine using the spare key and seek the assistance of a workshop.

**Note**
The immobiliser does not lock the doors. You should always lock the vehicle after leaving it and switch on the anti-theft alarm system \( \text{\} 25, \) \( \text{\} 31. \)

Control indicator \( \text{\textbullet} \) \( \text{\} 120. \)

---

**Exterior mirrors**

**Convex shape**
The convex exterior mirror contains an aspherical area and reduces blind spots. The shape of the mirror makes objects appear smaller, which will affect the ability to estimate distances.

**Electric adjustment**
Select the relevant exterior mirror by turning the control to left (L) or right (R). Then swivel the control to adjust the mirror.

---

**Folding mirrors**
For pedestrian safety, the exterior mirrors will swing out of their normal mounting position if they are struck with sufficient force. Reposition the mirror by applying slight pressure to the mirror housing.
Electric folding

Turn control to 0, then push the control down. Both exterior mirrors will fold.
Push the control down again - both exterior mirrors return to their original position.
If an electrically folded mirror is manually extended, pressing down the control will only electrically extend the other mirror.

Heated mirrors

Operated by pressing the button. Heating works with the engine running and is switched off automatically after a short time.

Interior mirrors

Manual anti-dazzle

To reduce dazzle, adjust the lever on the underside of the mirror housing.
Automatic anti-dazzle

Dazzle from following vehicles at night is automatically reduced.

Windows

Windscreen

**Heat-reflecting windscreen**
The heat-reflecting windscreen has a coating which reflects solar radiation. Also data signals, e.g. from toll stations, might be reflected.

The marked areas on the windscreen are not covered with the coating. Devices for electronic data recording and fee payment must be attached in these areas. Otherwise data recording malfunctions may occur.

Windscreen stickers

Do not attach stickers such as toll road stickers or similar on the windscreen in the area of the interior mirror. Otherwise the detection zone of the sensor and the view area of the camera in the mirror housing could be restricted.

Manual windows

The door windows can be opened or closed with the window winders.

Power windows

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Warning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Take care when operating the power windows. Risk of injury, particularly to children. If there are children on the rear seats, switch on the child safety system for the power windows.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Keys, doors and windows

Keep a close watch on the windows when closing them. Ensure that nothing becomes trapped in them as they move.

Switch on ignition to operate power windows. Retained power off \( \Diamond \) 163.

Operate the switch for the respective window by pushing to open or pulling to close.

Pushing or pulling firmly to the second detent and then releasing: window moves up or down automatically with safety function enabled. To stop movement, operate the switch once more in the same direction.

**Safety function**
If the window glass encounters resistance above the middle of the window during automatic closing, it is immediately stopped and opened again.

**Override safety function**
In the event of closing difficulties due to frost or the like, switch on the ignition, then pull the switch to the first detent and hold. The window moves up without safety function enabled. To stop movement, release the switch.

Child safety system for rear windows

Press switch \( \square \) to deactivate rear door power windows; the LED illuminates. To activate, press \( \square \) again.

Operating windows from outside
The windows can be operated remotely from outside the vehicle.
Press and hold the button to open windows.
Press and hold the button to close windows.
Release button to stop window movement.

If the windows are fully opened or closed, the hazard warning lights will flash twice.

**Overload**
If the windows are repeatedly operated within short intervals, the window operation is disabled for some time.

**Initialising the power windows**
If the windows cannot be closed automatically (e.g. after disconnecting the vehicle battery), a warning message or a warning code is displayed in the Driver Information Centre.

Vehicle messages 128.
Activate the window electronics as follows:
1. Close doors.
2. Switch on ignition.
3. Pull switch until the window is closed and keep pulling for additional 2 seconds.
4. Repeat for each window.

**Heated rear window**
Operated by pressing the button.
Heating works with the engine running and is switched off automatically after a short time.

**Sun visors**
The sun visors can be folded down or swivelled to the side to prevent dazzling.
If the sun visors have integral mirrors, the mirror covers should be closed when driving.
A ticket holder is located on the backside of the sun visor.

## Roof

### Sunroof

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Warning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| Take care when operating the sunroof. Risk of injury, particularly to children.  
Keep a close watch on the movable parts when operating them. Ensure that nothing becomes trapped in them as they move. |

Switch on ignition to operate the sunroof.

**Open or close**

Press ⬇️ or ⬆️ gently to the first detent: sunroof is opened or closed with safety function enabled as long as the switch is operated.  
Press ⬇️ or ⬆️ firmly to the second detent and then release: the sunroof is opened or closed automatically with safety function enabled. To stop movement, operate the switch once more.

**Raise or close**

Press ⬇️ or ⬆️: sunroof is raised or closed automatically with safety function enabled.
If the sunroof is raised, it can be opened in one step by pressing 🔄.

**Sunblind**
The sunblind is manually operated. Close or open the sunblind by sliding. When the sunroof is open, the sunblind is always open.

**General hints**

**Safety function**
If the sunroof encounters resistance during automatic closing, it is immediately stopped and opened again.

**Override safety function**
In the event of closing difficulties, e.g. due to frost, hold the switch 🔄 pressed to the second detent. The sunroof closes with safety function disabled. To stop movement, release the switch.

**Closing sunroof from outside**
The sunroof can be closed remotely from outside the vehicle.

Press and hold 🔄 button to close the sunroof.
Release the button to stop the movement.

**Initialising after a power failure**
After a power failure, it may only be possible to operate the sunroof to a limited extent. Have the system initialised by your workshop.

**Glass panel**

**Panorama roof**
Turn the handle and move the roof cover to a suitable position.
The roof cover engages in position after releasing the handle.

**Note**
Close the sun visors before sliding the roof lining.
**Seats, restraints**

- Head restraints ......................... 40
- Front seats .............................. 42
- Rear seats ............................... 49
- Seat belts ............................... 49
- Airbag system ........................... 52
- Child restraints ......................... 56

---

**Head restraints**

**Position**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Warning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Only drive with the head restraint set to the proper position.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The upper edge of the head restraint should be at upper head level. If this is not possible for extremely tall people, set to highest position, and set to lowest position for small people.

---

**Adjustment**

Head restraints on front seats

Height adjustment
Press release button, adjust height, engage.
Horizontal adjustment

To adjust horizontally, pull the head restraint forwards. It engages in several positions.

To return to its rearmost position, pull fully forwards and release.

Head restraints on rear seats

Height adjustment
Pull the head restraint upwards or press the catch to release and push the head restraint downwards.

Removal
Press both catches, pull the head restraint upwards and remove.

Active head restraints
In the event of a rear-end impact, the front parts of the active head restraints are moved slightly forwards. Thus the head is supported so that the risk of whiplash injury is reduced.

Note
Approved accessories may only be attached if the seat is not in use.
Front seats

Seat position

- Sit with buttocks as far back against the backrest as possible. Adjust the distance between the seat and the pedals so that legs are slightly angled when pressing the pedals. Slide the front passenger seat as far back as possible.

- Sit with shoulders as far back against the backrest as possible. Set the backrest rake so that it is possible to easily reach the steering wheel with arms slightly bent. Maintain contact between shoulders and the backrest when turning the steering wheel. Do not angle the backrest too far back. We recommend a maximum rake of approx. 25°.

- Adjust the steering wheel 3102.

- Set seat height high enough to have a clear field of vision on all sides and of all display instruments. There should be at least one hand of clearance between head and the roof frame. Your thighs should rest lightly on the seat without pressing into it.

- Adjust the head restraint 340.

- Adjust the height of the seat belt 350.

- Adjust the thigh support so that there is a space approx. two fingers wide between the edge of the seat and the hollow of the knee.

- Adjust the lumbar support so that it supports the natural shape of the spine.

Seat adjustment

- Only drive with the seat correctly adjusted.

- Adjust the thigh support so that there is a space approx. two fingers wide between the edge of the seat and the hollow of the knee.

- Adjust the lumbar support so that it supports the natural shape of the spine.

- Do not sit nearer than 25 cm from the steering wheel, to permit safe airbag deployment.

- Never adjust seats while driving as they could move uncontrollably.
**Warning**

Never store any subjects under the seats.

Drive only with engaged seats and backrests.

**Seat positioning**

Pull handle, slide seat, release handle.

**Seat backrests**

Pull lever, adjust inclination and release lever. Allow the backrest to engage audibly.

**Seat height**

Lever pumping motion
- up = seat higher
- down = seat lower
Seat inclination

Lever pumping motion
up = front end higher
down = front end lower

Lumbar support

Adjust lumbar support using the four-way switch to suit personal requirements.
Moving support up and down: push switch up or down.
Increasing and decreasing support: push switch forwards or backwards.

Adjustable thigh support

Pull the lever and slide the thigh support.
Side bolster, OPC version

Adjust seat width and backrest width using the switches to suit personal requirements.
Operate front rocker switch to change seat width.
Operate rear rocker switch to change backrest width.

Seat folding

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Caution</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>When seat height is in highest position, push head restraints down and lift up sun visors before folding backrest forwards.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Seat folding on manual operated seats

Lift release lever and fold backrest forwards. Slide seat forwards.

To restore, slide the seat backwards. Move the backrest against the resistance to the upright position and engage.
The memory function allows the seat to engage in its original position.
Do not operate backrest inclination lever while backrest is tilted forward.
Vehicles with panorama roof: to tilt backrest forward, push head restraints down and lift up sun visors.

The illustration shows the release lever on OPC seat.
Danger

Move the backrest to an upright position before folding to avoid injury.

Seat folding on power seats

Lift release lever and fold backrest forwards. The seat slides automatically forwards to the stop.
To restore lift backrest to upright position and engage. The seat slides automatically backwards to the original position.

In case the head restraint of the folded backrest is blocked by the upper windscreen frame, slightly let the seat move backwards before lifting up the backrest 46.

Safety function
If the power seat encounters resistance while sliding forward or rearward, it is immediately stopped and moved back.

Overload
If the folding function is electrically overloaded, the power supply is automatically cut-off for a short time.

Power seat adjustment

Warning
Care must be taken when operating the power seats. There is a risk of injury, particularly for children. Objects could become trapped.

Keep a close watch on the seats when adjusting them. Vehicle passengers should be informed accordingly.

Seat lengthwise position

Move switch forwards/backwards.
Seat height

Move switch upwards/downwards.

Seat inclination

Seat backrests

Turn switch forwards/backwards.

Lumbar support

Adjust lumbar support using the four-way switch to suit personal requirements.

Moving support up and down: push switch up or down.

Increasing and decreasing support: push switch forwards or backwards.
Adjustable thigh support

Pull the lever and slide the thigh support.

Overload
If the seat setting is electrically overloaded, the power supply is automatically cut-off for a short time.

Armrest

The armrest can be slid forwards by 10 cm. Under the armrest there is a storage compartment.

Armrest storage ◄ 64.

Heating

Adjust heating to the desired setting by pressing the 📱 button for the respective seat one or more times. The control indicator in the button indicates the setting.

Prolonged use of the highest setting for people with sensitive skin is not recommended.

Seat heating is operational when engine is running and during an Autostop.

Stop-start system ◄ 165.
Rear seats

Armrest

Fold armrest down. The armrest contains cupholders and a storage box.

Seat belts

The seat belts are locked during heavy acceleration or deceleration of the vehicle holding the occupants in the sitting position. Therefore the risk of injury is considerably reduced.

⚠️ Warning

Fasten seat belt before each trip. In the event of an accident, people not wearing seat belts endanger their fellow occupants and themselves.

Seat belts are designed to be used by only one person at a time. Child restraint system 56.

Periodically check all parts of the belt system for damage, pollution and proper functionality.

Have damaged components replaced. After an accident, have the belts and triggered belt pretensioners replaced by a workshop.

⚠️ Warning

The openings in the backrests of the OPC seats are not designed to mount or carry through any kind of additional seat belts.

Note

Make sure that the belts are not damaged by shoes or sharp-edged objects or trapped. Prevent dirt from getting into the belt retractors.
Seats, restraints

Seat belt reminder
Front seats are equipped with a seat belt reminder, indicated for driver seat as control indicator in the tachometer and for passenger seat in the centre console.

Belt force limiters
On the front seats, stress on the body is reduced by the gradual release of the belt during a collision.

Belt pretensioners
In the event of a head-on or rear-end collision of a certain severity, the front seat belts are tightened.

⚠️ Warning
Incorrect handling (e.g. removal or fitting of belts) can trigger the belt pretensioners.

Deployment of the belt pretensioners is indicated by continuous illumination of control indicator.

Triggered belt pretensioners must be replaced by a workshop. Belt pretensioners can only be triggered once.

Note
Do not affix or install accessories or other objects that may interfere with the operation of the belt pretensioners. Do not make any modifications to belt pretensioner components as this will invalidate the vehicle type approval.

Three-point seat belt
Fastening

Withdraw the belt from the retractor, guide it untwisted across the body and insert the latch plate into the buckle. Tighten the lap belt regularly whilst driving by pulling the shoulder belt.

Loose or bulky clothing prevents the belt from fitting snugly. Do not place objects such as handbags or mobile phones between the belt and your body.
**Warning**

The belt must not rest against hard or fragile objects in the pockets of your clothing.

Seat belt reminder 😷 115.

**Height adjustment**

1. Pull belt out slightly.
2. Press button.
3. Adjust height and engage.

Adjust the height so that the belt lies across the shoulder. It must not lie across the throat or upper arm. Do not adjust while driving.

**Removing**

To release belt, press red button on belt buckle.

**Seat belts on the rear seats**

The seat belt for the rear centre seat can only be withdrawn from the retractor if the backrest is engaged in upright position.
Using the seat belt while pregnant

The lap belt must be positioned as low as possible across the pelvis to prevent pressure on the abdomen.

⚠️ Warning

If handled improperly the airbag systems can be triggered in an explosive manner.

Note

The airbag systems and belt pretensioner control electronics are located in the centre console area. Do not put any magnetic objects in this area.

Do not affix any objects onto the airbag covers and do not cover them with other materials.

Airbag system

The airbag system consists of a number of individual systems depending on the scope of equipment.

When triggered, the airbags inflate within milliseconds. They also deflate so quickly that it is often unnoticeable during the collision.

⚠️ Warning

If handled improperly the airbag systems can be triggered in an explosive manner.

Front airbag system

The front airbag system consists of one airbag in the steering wheel and one in the instrument panel on the front passenger side. These can be identified by the word AIRBAG.

Each airbag is triggered only once. Have deployed airbags replaced by a workshop. Furthermore, it may be necessary to have the steering wheel, the instrument panel, parts of the panelling, the door seals, handles and the seats replaced.

Do not make any modifications to the airbag system as this will invalidate the vehicle type approval.

When the airbags inflate escaping hot gases may cause burns.

Control indicator ⚠️ for airbag systems ⚠️ 115.
Additionally there is a warning label on the side of the instrument panel, visible when the front passenger door is open, or on the front passenger sun visor.

The front airbag system is triggered in the event of a front-end impact of a certain severity. The ignition must be switched on.

The inflated airbags cushion the impact, thereby reducing the risk of injury to the upper body and head of the front seat occupants considerably.

**Warning**

Optimum protection is only provided when the seat is in the proper position.

Seat position ◇ 42.

Keep the area in which the airbag inflates clear of obstructions.

Fit the seat belt correctly and engage securely. Only then is the airbag able to protect.

**Side airbag system**

The side airbag system consists of an airbag in each front seat backrest. This can be identified by the word AIRBAG.

The side airbag system is triggered in the event of a side impact of a certain severity. The ignition must be switched on.
The inflated airbags cushion the impact, thereby reducing the risk of injury to the upper body and pelvis in the event of a side-on collision considerably.

### Warning
Keep the area in which the airbag inflates clear of obstructions.

### Note
Only use protective seat covers that have been approved for the vehicle. Be careful not to cover the airbags.

### Curtain airbag system
The curtain airbag system consists of an airbag in the roof frame on each side. This can be identified by the word **AIRBAG** on the roof pillars. The curtain airbag system is triggered in the event of a side-on impact of a certain severity. The ignition must be switched on.

### Warning
Keep the area in which the airbag inflates clear of obstructions. The hooks on the handles in the roof frame are only suitable for hanging up light articles of clothing, without coat hangers. Do not keep any items in these clothes.

### Airbag deactivation
The front passenger airbag system must be deactivated if a child restraint system is to be fitted on this seat. The side airbag and curtain airbag systems, the belt pretensioners and all driver airbag systems will remain active.

The inflated airbags cushion the impact, thereby reducing the risk of injury to the head in the event of a side-on impact considerably.
The front passenger airbag system can be deactivated via a key-operated switch on the right side of the instrument panel.

Use the ignition key to choose the position:

- **OFF** = front passenger airbag is deactivated and will not inflate in the event of a collision. Control indicator OFF illuminates continuously in the centre console. A child restraint system can be installed in accordance with the chart Child restraint installation locations 58. No adult person is allowed to occupy the front passenger seat.

- **ON** = front passenger airbag is active. A child restraint system must not be installed.

**Danger**

- Risk of fatal injury for a child using a child restraint system on a seat with activated front passenger airbag.

- Risk of fatal injury for an adult person on a seat with deactivated front passenger airbag.

If both control indicators are illuminated for approx. 60 seconds after the ignition is switched on, the front passenger airbag system will inflate in the event of a collision.

If the control indicator **OFF** illuminates for approx. 60 seconds after the ignition is switched on, the front passenger airbag system will inflate in the event of a collision.

If both control indicators are illuminated at the same time, there is a system failure. The status of the system is not discernible, therefore no person is allowed to occupy the front passenger seat. Contact a workshop immediately.
Change status only when the vehicle is stopped with the ignition off.
Status remains until the next change.
Control indicator for airbag deactivation 115.

Child restraints

Child restraint systems
We recommend the Opel child restraint system which is tailored specifically to the vehicle.
When a child restraint system is being used, pay attention to the following usage and installation instructions and also those supplied with the child restraint system.
Always comply with local or national regulations. In some countries, the use of child restraint systems is forbidden on certain seats.

⚠ Warning

When using a child restraint system on the front passenger seat, the airbag systems for the front passenger seat must be deactivated; if not, the triggering of the airbags poses a risk of fatal injury to the child.

This is especially the case if rear-facing child restraint systems are used on the front passenger seat.

Airbag deactivation 54.
Airbag label 52.

Selecting the right system
The rear seats are the most convenient location to fasten a child restraint system.
Children should travel facing rearwards in the vehicle as long as possible. This makes sure that the child's backbone, which is still very weak, is under less strain in the event of an accident.
Suitable are restraint systems that comply with valid UN ECE regulations. Check local laws and regulations for mandatory use of child restraint systems.
Ensure that the child restraint system to be installed is compatible with the vehicle type.
Ensure that the mounting location of the child restraint system within the vehicle is correct, see following tables.

Allow children to enter and exit the vehicle only on the side facing away from the traffic.

When the child restraint system is not in use, secure the seat with a seat belt or remove it from the vehicle.

**Note**

Do not affix anything on the child restraint systems and do not cover them with any other materials.

A child restraint system which has been subjected to stress in an accident must be replaced.
### Child restraint installation locations

**Permissible options for fitting a child restraint system**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Weight and age class</th>
<th>On front passenger seat</th>
<th>On rear outboard seats</th>
<th>On rear centre seat</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Group 0: up to 10 kg</strong> or approx. 10 months</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>U¹</td>
<td>U²</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Group 0+: up to 13 kg</strong> or approx. 2 years</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>U¹</td>
<td>U</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Group I: 9 to 18 kg</strong> or approx. 8 months to 4 years</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>U¹</td>
<td>U</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Group II: 15 to 25 kg</strong> or approx. 3 to 7 years</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>U</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Group III: 22 to 36 kg</strong> or approx. 6 to 12 years</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>U</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 = If the child restraint system is being secured using a three-point seat belt, move seat height adjustment to uppermost position and ensure that vehicle seat belt runs forwards from the upper anchorage point. Adjust seat backrest inclination as far as necessary to a vertical position to ensure that the belt is tight on the buckle side.

U = Universal suitability in conjunction with three-point seat belt.

X = No child restraint system permitted in this weight class.
### Permissible options for fitting an ISOFIX child restraint system

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Weight class</th>
<th>Size class</th>
<th>Fixture</th>
<th>On front passenger seat</th>
<th>On rear outboard seats</th>
<th>On rear centre seat</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Group 0</strong>: up to 10 kg or approx. 10 months</td>
<td>E</td>
<td>ISO/R1</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>IL</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Group 0+</strong>: up to 13 kg or approx. 2 years</td>
<td>E</td>
<td>ISO/R1</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>IL</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>D</td>
<td>ISO/R2</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>IL</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>C</td>
<td>ISO/R3</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>IL</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Group I</strong>: 9 to 18 kg or approx. 8 months to 4 years</td>
<td>D</td>
<td>ISO/R2</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>IL</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>C</td>
<td>ISO/R3</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>IL</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>B</td>
<td>ISO/F2</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>IL, IUF</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>B1</td>
<td>ISO/F2X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>IL, IUF</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>A</td>
<td>ISO/F3</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>IL, IUF</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Group II</strong>: 15 to 25 kg or approx. 3 to 7 years</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>IL</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Group III</strong>: 22 to 36 kg or approx. 6 to 12 years</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>IL</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
IL = Suitable for particular ISOFIX restraint systems of the 'specific-vehicle', 'restricted' or 'semi-universal' categories. The ISOFIX restraint system must be approved for the specific vehicle type.
IUF = Suitable for ISOFIX forward-facing child restraint systems of universal category approved for use in this weight class.
X = No ISOFIX child restraint system approved in this weight class.

ISOFIX size class and seat device
A – ISO/F3 = Forward-facing child restraint system for children of maximum size in the weight class 9 to 18 kg.
B – ISO/F2 = Forward-facing child restraint system for smaller children in the weight class 9 to 18 kg.
B1 – ISO/F2X = Forward-facing child restraint system for smaller children in the weight class 9 to 18 kg.
C – ISO/R3 = Rear-facing child restraint system for children of maximum size in the weight class up to 18 kg.
D – ISO/R2 = Rear-facing child restraint system for smaller children in the weight class up to 18 kg.
E – ISO/R1 = Rear-facing child restraint system for young children in the weight class up to 13 kg.
**ISOFIX child restraint systems**

Fasten vehicle-approved ISOFIX child restraint systems to the ISOFIX mounting brackets. Specific vehicle ISOFIX child restraint system positions are marked in the table by IL.

ISOFIX mounting brackets are indicated by a label on the backrest.

**Top-tether fastening eyes**

Depending on country specific equipment, the vehicle might have two or three fastening eyes. Top-Tether fastening eyes are marked with the symbol 🛊 for a child seat.

On Notchback version, open the flap of the required fastening eye on the placement area behind the head restraints, marked by the child seat symbol.

On Hatchback and Sports Tourer fastening eyes are on the backside of rear seats.

In addition to the ISOFIX mounting, fasten the Top-Tether strap to the Top-Tether fastening eyes. The strap must run between the two guide rods of the head restraint.

ISOFIX child restraint systems of universal category positions are marked in the table by IUF.
Storage compartments

**Warning**

Do not store heavy or sharp objects in the storage compartments. Otherwise, the storage compartment lid could open and vehicle occupants could be injured by objects being thrown around in the event of hard braking, a sudden change in direction or an accident.

Glovebox

The glovebox features a pen holder, a credit card holder, a coin holder and an adapter for the locking wheel nuts. The glovebox should be closed whilst driving.

Cupholders

Cupholders are located in the centre console.
Depending on the version, cupholders are located under a cover in the centre console. Slide cover backwards. Bottles can be stowed after folding up the intermediate shelf ◄ 65.

Additional cupholders are located in the rear armrest. Fold down the armrest.

A storage compartment is located next to the steering wheel.
Underseat storage

Press button in the recess and pull out drawer. Maximum load: 3 kg. To close, push in and engage.
On version with rear carrier system 66, the tyre repair kit is stowed in the drawer.
Tyre repair kit 264.

Armrest storage

Storage under the front armrest

Press button to fold up the armrest. The armrest must be in rearmost position.

Storage in the rear armrest

Fold down armrest and open cover. Close cover before folding the armrest up.
Centre console storage

Front console

The storage container can be used to store small items.

Depending on the version, a storage compartment is located under a cover.

Slide cover backwards.

Press button to remove the frame of the cupholder. The frame can be stowed in the glovebox.

A further storage compartment is located under the intermediate shelf. Fold up the intermediate shelf and fix it in the vertical position. The frame of the cupholder can be reintegrated to stow bottles.

Rear console

Pull out the drawer.

Caution

Do not use for ashes or for other glowing items.
Rear carrier system

Rear carrier system for two bicycles

The rear carrier system (Flex-Fix system) allows bicycles to be attached to a pull-out carrier integrated into the vehicle floor. The transportation of other objects is not permitted.

The maximum load of the rear carrier system is 40 kg. The maximum load per bicycle is 20 kg.

The wheelbase of a bicycle must not exceed 1.15 metres. Otherwise the secure fastening of a bicycle is not possible.

If not in use, the carrier system must be slid back into the vehicle floor.

There must not be any objects on the bicycles that could become loose during transportation.

**Caution**

Do not attach bicycles with carbon pedal cranks to bicycle carriers.

The bicycles might get damaged.

**Extending**

Open the tailgate.

**Warning**

No-one should be in the extension zone of the rear carrier system, risk of injury.

Pull release lever up. The system disengages and travels quickly out of the bumper.
Completely pull out the rear carrier system until you hear it engage. Ensure that it is not possible to push in the rear carrier system without pulling the release lever again.

⚠️ Warning

It is only permissible to fit objects to the rear carrier system if the system has been correctly engaged. If the rear carrier system will not engage correctly, do not fit objects to the system and slide the system back. Seek the assistance of a workshop.

Install the tail lamps

First remove the rear (1), then the front (2) tail lamp from the recesses.

Open out the lamp support on the back of the tail lamp completely.

Push the clamping lever down and push the lamp support into the retainer until it engages. Perform this procedure for both tail lamps.
Check the cable and lamp position to make sure these are correctly installed and are securely located.

Swivel the right clamping lever (1) first, followed by the left clamping lever (2), until a resistance is noticeable.

The rear carrier system is locked when the clamping levers are swivelled by approx. 50°. Otherwise safe functionality is not guaranteed.

**Note**
Close the tailgate.
Unfold pedal crank recesses

Fold one or both pedal crank recesses upwards until the diagonal support engages.

Remove the pedal crank mounts from the pedal crank recesses.

Adapting the rear carrier system to a bicycle

Press the release lever and withdraw the wheel recesses.
Push the release lever on the strap retainer and remove the strap retainer.

**Prepare the bicycle for attachment**

Note
The maximum width for the pedal crank is 38.3 mm and the maximum depth is 14.4 mm.

Rotate the left pedal (without a chain cog) vertically downwards. The pedal on the left pedal crank must be horizontal.

The front bicycle must have its front wheel facing left.

The rear bicycle must have its front wheel facing right.

**Attaching a bicycle to the rear carrier system**

With the rotary lever on the pedal crank recess, roughly adapt the adjustable pedal crank unit to the protrusion of the pedal crank.

If the bicycle has straight pedal cranks, unscrew the pedal crank unit completely (position 5).

If the bicycle has curved pedal cranks, screw in the pedal crank unit all the way (position 1).
Put on the bicycle. The pedal crank here must be placed in the pedal crank recess opening, as shown in the illustration.

**Caution**

Make sure that the pedal does not touch the surface of the rear end carrier. Otherwise the crankset might be damaged during the transport.

Insert pedal crank mount into outer rail of each pedal crank recess from above and slide downwards until at least underneath the notching.

Attach the pedal crank by rotating the attachment screw on the pedal crank mount.

Place the wheel recesses such that the bicycle is more or less horizontal. Here, the distance between the pedals and the tailgate should be at least 5 cm. Both bicycle tyres must be in the wheel recesses.

**Caution**

Make sure to pull out the wheel recesses as far as necessary to have both bicycle tyres placed in the recesses. Otherwise a horizontal mounting of the bicycle is not ensured. Disregard could lead to damage of the bicycle wheels caused by hot exhaust fumes.
Align the bicycle in the longitudinal direction of the vehicle: Slightly loosen the pedal mount.
Place the bicycle upright using the rotary lever on the pedal crank recess.
If the two bicycles obstruct one another, the relative positions of the bicycles can be adapted by adjusting the wheel recesses and the rotary lever on the pedal crank recess until the bicycles no longer touch one another. Make sure there is sufficient clearance from the vehicle.

Tighten the attachment screw for the pedal bearing mount to its maximum point by hand.
Secure both bicycle wheels to the wheel recesses using the strap retainers.
Check the bicycle to make sure it is secure.

**Caution**

Ensure gap between bicycle and vehicle is at least 5 cm. If necessary, loosen handlebar and swivel sideways.

The settings for the wheel recesses and on the rotary lever on the pedal crank recess should be noted and saved for each bicycle. Correct presetting will facilitate refitting of the bicycle.

It is recommended to attach a warning sign at the rearmost bicycle to increase visibility.
Removing a bicycle from the rear carrier system

Undo strap retainers on both bicycle tyres.

Hold on to the bicycle, loosen the attachment screw for the pedal bearing mount, then lift the pedal bearing mount to remove it.

Retracting the rear carrier system

Push the pedal crank mounts into the pedal crank recess, as shown in the illustration.

Insert the strap retainer and pull tightly downwards as far as possible.

Press release lever and slide in wheel recesses all the way as far as they will go.
Disengage the locking lever on the diagonal support and fold both pedal crank recesses down.

⚠️ Warning

Risk of pinching.

Swivel first the left clamping lever (1), followed by the right clamping lever (2), until they stop.

Push the clamping lever down and pull both lamp supports out of the recesses.

Fold in the lamp supports on the backs of the tail lamps.
First place the front (1) tail lamp, then the rear (2) tail lamp in the recesses and push down as far as possible. Push cables all the way into all guides in order to prevent damage.
Open the tailgate.
Push the release lever up and hold. Lift the system slightly and push it into the bumper until it engages.

Release lever must return to original position.

⚠️ Warning

If the system cannot be correctly engaged, please seek the assistance of a workshop.

Rear carrier system for four bicycles

The rear carrier system (Flex-Fix system) allows two bicycles to be attached to a pull-out carrier integrated into the vehicle floor. It is possible to attach two further bicycles on an adapter. The transportation of other objects is not permitted.

The maximum load of the rear carrier system is 80 kg with attached adapter and 60 kg without attached adapter. The maximum load per bicycle on the pull-out carrier is 30 kg. This allows the attachment of electrically-powered bicycles to the pull-out carrier. The maximum load per bicycle on the adapter is 20 kg.

The wheelbase of a bicycle must not exceed 1.15 metres. Otherwise the secure fastening of a bicycle is not possible.

If not in use, the carrier system must be slid back into the vehicle floor. There must not be any objects on the bicycles that could become loose during transportation.

Caution

If the rear carrier system is extended and the vehicle is fully loaded, the chassis clearance will be reduced.

Drive carefully whenever the road has a strong inclination or when driving over a ramp, bump, etc.
**Caution**

Consult your bicycle dealer before attaching bicycles with carbon frames. The bicycles might get damaged.

**Extending**

Open the tailgate.

**Warning**

No-one should be in the extension zone of the rear carrier system, risk of injury.

Pull release lever up. The system disengages and travels quickly out of the bumper.

Completely pull out the rear carrier system until you hear it engage. Ensure that it is not possible to push in the rear carrier system without pulling the release lever again.

**Warning**

It is only permissible to fit objects to the rear carrier system if the system has been correctly engaged. If the rear carrier system will not engage correctly, do not fit objects to the system and slide the system back. Seek the assistance of a workshop.

**Unfold number plate holder**

Lift the number plate holder and fold it backwards.
Fold out tail lamps

Fold out both tail lamps.

Lock the rear carrier system

Swivel both clamping levers sideward as far as they will go. Otherwise safe functionality is not guaranteed.

Fold out wheel recesses

Fold out both wheel recesses.

Assembling the bicycle rack

Lift the rack at the rear (1) and pull it backwards.
Fold up the rack (2).
1. Rotate the pedals into position (as shown in the illustration) and put the bicycle on the foremost wheel recess. Make sure that the bicycle stands centrally on the wheel recesses.

2. Attach the short mounting bracket to the bicycle frame. Turn the knob clockwise to fasten.

3. Secure both bicycle wheels to the wheel recesses using the strap retainers.

4. Check the bicycle to make sure it is secure.

**Caution**

Ensure gap between bicycle and vehicle is at least 5 cm. If necessary, loosen handlebar and swivel sidewards.
Attaching the adapter
When carrying more than two bicycles, the adapter must be fixed before the second bicycle is attached.

1. Apply the adapter to the rear carrier system as shown in the illustration.

2. Turn the lever (1) forwards and hold, then lower the adapter (2) at the rear.

3. Release lever and check if the adapter is engaged securely.

4. Guide the strap attached to the adapter underneath the lever for folding back the rear carrier system. Fasten the strap.

Attaching further bicycles
The attachment of further bicycles is similar to the attachment of the first bicycle. Additionally some steps must be considered:

1. Before putting on the bicycle, always unfold the wheel recesses for the next bicycle if necessary.

2. Always rotate the pedals into an appropriate position before putting on the bicycle.
3. Position the bicycles on the rear carrier system alternately aligned to the left and to the right.

4. Align the bicycles to the one attached before. The wheel hubs of the bicycles must not touch each other.

5. Attach the bicycles with mounting brackets and strap retainers as described for the first bicycle. The mounting brackets should be fixed in parallel. Use the long mounting bracket to attach the second bicycle to the rack.

6. Additionally secure both bicycle wheels of the fourth bicycle to the wheel recesses using the tensioning straps.
It is recommended to attach a warning sign at the rearmost bicycle to increase visibility.

**Fold the rear carrier system backwards**
The rear carrier system can be folded backwards to get access to the load compartment.

- **Without attached adapter:**
  - Push the lever (1) to disengage and hold.
  - Pull the rack (2) backwards to fold the rear carrier system.

- **With attached adapter:**
  - **WARNING**
  - Take care when disengaging the rear carrier system as it will tilt backwards. Risk of injury.
  - Hold frame (1) of rearmost bicycle with one hand and pull the loop (2) to disengage.
  - Hold rearmost bicycle with both hands and fold the rear carrier system backwards.
  - To increase visibility, the tail lights of the vehicle are activated when the rear carrier system is folded back.

- **WARNING**
  - When folding the rear carrier system forwards again, take care that the system is engaged securely.

**Removing bicycles**
Undo strap retainers on both bicycle tyres.
Turn knob anti-clockwise and remove mounting brackets.

**Detaching adapter**
Detach the adapter before removing the last bicycle left on the rear carrier system.
1. Fold in wheel recesses.
2. Unbutton the strap.

3. Turn the lever (1) forwards and hold.

4. Lift the adapter (2) at the rear and remove.

**Disassembling the bicycle rack**

Arrange mounting brackets as shown in the illustration.

Swivel handle (1) forwards to disengage and lift the rack (2).

Fold the rack backwards, then push forwards until it stops (1).
Press the rack down at the rear (2).

**Fold in wheel recesses**
Fold in both wheel recesses.
Stow the strap retainers accurately.

**Unlock the rear carrier system**

Swivel both clamping levers inwards as far as they will go.

**Fold in tail lamps**
Swivel in both tail lamps.

**Fold in number plate holder**
Lift the number plate holder and fold it forwards.

**Retracting the rear carrier system**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Caution</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Take care that all foldable parts, e.g. wheel recesses and mounting brackets, are stowed accurately. Otherwise the rear carrier system might get damaged when trying to retract it.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Push the release lever up and hold. Lift the system slightly and push it into the bumper until it engages. Release lever must return to original position.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Warning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>If the system cannot be correctly engaged, please seek the assistance of a workshop.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Load compartment

The rear seat backrest is divided into two parts. Both parts can be folded down.

Load compartment extension, 3-door and 5-door hatchback, 4-door notchback
- Only 3-door and 5-door hatchback: remove the load compartment cover if necessary.
- Press and hold the catch to push the head restraints down.
- Fold up the rear armrest.

- Guide the seat belts through side supports to protect them against damage. When folding the backrests, pull the seat belts along with them.
- Pull the release lever on one or both sides and fold down the backrests onto the seat cushion.
- Take the seat belt out of the seat backrest guide and put it behind the retainer as shown in the illustration.

Ensure that the seat belts of the outboard seats are placed in the corresponding belt guides.

The backrests are properly engaged when the red marks on both sides near the release lever are no longer visible.

Warning

When folding up, ensure that backrests are securely locked in position before driving. Failure to do so may result in personal injury.
or damage to the load or vehicle in the event of hard braking or a collision.

The seat belt of the centre seat could be blocked when the backrest is folded up too quickly. To unlock the retractor, push in the seat belt or pull it out by approx. 20 mm then release.

Load compartment extension, Sports tourer

Folding down rear backrests

- Remove the load compartment cover if necessary.

- Press and hold the catch to push the head restraints down ◊ 40.
- Fold up the rear armrest.

- Guide the seat belts through side supports to protect them against damage. When folding the backrests, pull the seat belts along with them.
- Pull the release lever on one or both sides and fold down the backrests onto the seat cushion.

Electric seat folding

On vehicles with electric seat folding, the rear seats can also be folded from the load compartment.

- Pull switch on left or right sidewall of the load compartment to fold the corresponding part of the rear seat.

⚠️ Warning

Take care when operating the electric foldable rear seats. The seat backrest is folded with considerable power. Risk of injury, particularly to children.

Ensure that nothing is attached to the rear seats or located on the seat cushion.
If the vehicle is to be loaded via a rear door, take the seat belt out of the seat backrest guide and put it behind the retainer (as shown in the illustration).

To fold up, raise the backrests and guide them into an upright position until they engage audibly.

Ensure that the seat belts of the outboard seats are placed in the corresponding belt guides.

The backrests are properly engaged when the red marks on both sides near the release lever are no longer visible.

**Warning**

Only drive the vehicle if the backrests are securely locked into position. Otherwise there is a risk of personal injury or damage to the load or vehicle in the event of hard braking or a collision.

The seat belt of the centre seat could be blocked when the backrest is folded up too quickly. To unlock the retractor, push in the seat belt or pull it out by approx. 20 mm then release.
Raise the seat cushion and fold the backrest

- Pull the strap on one or both seat cushions and lift the rear of the cushion forwards.
- Press and hold the catch to push the head restraints down 3/4.
- Pull the release lever on one or both sides of the backrests and fold down onto the seat cushion to get a flat load bay.

Remove the seat cushion

- Push both levers forward and remove seat cushion to extend the loading area.

- To attach, apply seat cushion as shown in the illustration and engage both levers.

Open the pass-through in the rear centre backrest

- Fold down the rear armrest.

- Pull the grip and open the cover. Suitable for loading long, narrow objects.
- Ensure that the cover engages after folding up.
The closed cover can be secured from the side of the load compartment. Turn the knob 90°:

- **horizontal** = cover secured from the side of the passenger compartment
- **vertical** = cover not secured

### Load compartment cover

Do not place any objects on the cover.

### Rear storage

#### 3-door hatchback

Press both buttons and fold down cover.

Maximum load: 0.5 kg.

#### 3-door and 5-door hatchback

Removing

Unhook retaining straps from tailgate.
Lift cover at the rear and push it upwards at the front.
Remove the cover.
If the height adjustable cover is mounted in the middle or upper position, the load compartment cover can be stowed below it.
Height adjustable cover $\diamond$ 90.

**Fitting**
Engage cover in side guides and fold downwards. Attach retaining straps to tailgate.

**Sports tourer**

**Closing cover**
Pull the cover towards the rear using the handle until it engages in the sideward retainers.

**Opening cover**
Pull the handle at the end of the cover to the rear and downwards. It rolls up automatically.

**Cover in upper position**
Push the handle at the end of the cover downwards. The rear of the cover is guided upwards automatically.
Removing cover

Open the load compartment cover.
Pull the release lever on the right side up and hold it. Lift the cover first on the right side and remove from retainers.

The removed cover can be stored under the rear floor cover like shown in the graphic.
Rear floor storage cover 90.

Installing cover
Insert the left side of the load compartment cover in the recess, pull the release lever up and hold it, insert the right side of the load compartment cover and engage.

Rear floor storage cover

Rear floor cover, 3-door hatchback, 5-door hatchback

The rear floor cover can be lifted. Hinge the loop into the hook on the lower side of the load compartment cover.

Caution

Only use the hook for hanging up the rear floor cover and the height adjustable cover.
Height adjustable cover, 3-door hatchback, 5-door hatchback

The height adjustable cover can be mounted in three positions:
- directly above the rear floor cover (1),
- in a middle position (2)
- in an upper position (3).

**Caution**

Ensure that the front and rear end of the height adjustable cover are attached to the same level.

**Lifting**

To lift the cover to a higher level, pull the loop backwards and lift the rear edge of the cover onto the corresponding supports.

**Lowering**

To lower the cover, pull the strap backwards and push down the front centre of the cover at the same time.

**Caution**

Do not lower the height adjustable cover to position 1 in vehicles equipped with subwoofer. The subwoofer could be damaged.
Note
- If mounted in position 2 or 3, the space between the rear floor cover and the height adjustable cover can be used as a stowage compartment.
- The height adjustable cover can be lifted and hooked in with the strap when it is mounted in position 1 or 2.
- If mounted in position 2, an almost completely flat load bay is created if the rear seat backrests are folded forwards.
- Opening the side covers (e.g. when exchanging the rear light bulbs) is only possible with the height adjustable cover mounted in position 1 or 2.

Caution
- The height adjustable cover is able to withstand a load of no more than 100 kg.

Rear floor cover, Sports tourer

Lift the rear floor cover by pulling the handle. Fold and place the cover behind the rear seats.

The storage compartment below the rear floor cover can be divided by a bar.

Caution

Insert the bar into the recesses at the sidewalls.

Insert the bar into the rearmost recess when transporting heavy objects in the load compartment. Otherwise the rear floor cover might be damaged.
Lashing eyes

The lashing eyes are designed to secure items against slippage, e.g. using lashing straps or luggage net.

Cargo management system

The FlexOrganizer is a flexible system for dividing up the load compartment.

The system consists of:
- adapters,
- mesh pockets,
- hooks,
- service box,
- strap set.

The components are fitted in rails on both side panels using adapters and hooks.

Installation of adapters in the rails

Fold open the handle plate, insert the adapter into the upper and lower groove of the rail and move to the required position. Turn the handle plate upwards to lock the adapter. To remove, turn the handle plate down and move out of the rail.

Variable partition net

Insert adapters into the required position in the rails. Stick together the halves of the net rods.

To install, push rods together a little and insert into the relevant openings in the adapters.

To remove, press the net rods together and remove from the adapters.
Insert adapters into the required position in the rails. The net pocket can be suspended from the adapters.

Install the hook in the desired position first in the upper groove of the rail and then press in the lower groove. To remove, first pull out of the upper groove.

Install two hooks in the upper rail. Insert the upper brackets of the box from above into the hooks.
Alternatively install both hooks in the lower rail. Plug in the lower brackets of the box from above into the lower hooks.

**Strap set**

Insert the adapters of the strap set in a rail. Make sure that the belt is not twisted.

The strap set has two locks to open. The belt can be tightened.

**Safety net**

The safety net is available on the Sports tourer and can be installed behind the rear seats or, if the rear seat backrests are folded and the seat cushions raised, behind the front seats.

Passengers must not be transported behind the safety net.

**Installation**

**Behind the rear seats**

Attach lower hook with opening facing backward to eye in the right and left of the floor. Adjust strap length on safety net by attaching the upper hook to the eyes of the strap. Keep strap under tension while proceeding with installation of rod.
Behind the front seats

Attach strap to eyes underneath the rear seat cushion.
Fold backrests forward.
To get a flat load bay, first fold seat cushion before attaching the safety net. Move front seats forward to ease tension if necessary.

Installation of the rod

There are two installation openings in the roof frame: suspend and engage rod of net at one side, compress rod and suspend and engage at other side.
Load compartment § 84.

Removal
Unhook the safety net rods from the brackets in the roof frame. Detach straps from the eyes. Roll up the net and secure with a strap.
The removed safety net can be stored under the rear floor cover § 90.

Warning triangle

3-door hatchback, 5-door hatchback

Stow the warning triangle in the space behind the strap on the right side of the load compartment.
Sports tourer

Fold down straps. Stow the warning triangle in the space behind the straps on the inside of the tailgate.

4-door notchback

Stow the warning triangle in the recess on the left side of the load compartment.

First aid kit

5-door hatchback

Stow the first aid kit in the stowage compartment behind the warning triangle.

Before first use, press in the interior trim at the top and at the sides of the perforation. Then fold the trim outward to gain access to the stowage compartment.
3-door hatchback

Stow the first aid kit in the stowage compartment behind the warning triangle.

Use the recesses to fold down the cover.

Depending on the equipment, the first aid kit can be stored in the rear storage ⦿ 88.

Sports tourer

Fold down strap. Stow the first aid kit in the space behind a strap on the inside of the tailgate.

4-door notchback

Stow the first aid kit in the space behind the mesh net on the right side of the load compartment.
Roof rack system

Roof rack
For safety reasons and to avoid damage to the roof, the vehicle approved roof rack system is recommended. For further information contact your workshop.
Follow the installation instructions and remove the roof rack when not in use.

Mounting roof rack
Detach the cover from each mounting point by using a coin.

5-door hatchback, 4-door notchback
[Image of roof rack installation for 5-door hatchback, 4-door notchback]

3-door hatchback
[Image of roof rack installation for 3-door hatchback]

Sports tourer with roof railing
[Image of roof rack installation for sports tourer with roof railing]

Fasten the roof rack in the area of the holes, indicated by the arrows in the illustration.
Loading information

- Heavy objects in the load compartment should be placed against the seat backrests. Ensure that the backrests are securely engaged. If objects can be stacked, heavier objects should be placed at the bottom.

- Secure objects with lashing straps attached to the lashing eyes 93. Attach the height adjustable cover in the lowest position (1) 90.

- Use the four hooks at the sidewalls of the load compartment for hanging up carrier bags. Maximum load: 5 kg per hook.

- Sports tourer: Use the hooks at the sidewalls of the load compartment for hanging up carrier bags. Press to fold out the hook.

- Secure loose objects in the load compartment to prevent them from sliding.

- When transporting objects in the load compartment, the backrests of the rear seats must not be angled forward.

- Do not allow the load to protrude above the upper edge of the backrests.

- Do not place any objects on the load compartment cover or the instrument panel, and do not cover the sensor on top of the instrument panel.

- The load must not obstruct the operation of the pedals, parking brake and gear selector lever, or hinder the freedom of movement of the driver. Do not place any unsecured objects in the interior.

- Do not drive with an open load compartment.

⚠️ Warning

Always make sure that the load in the vehicle is securely stowed. Otherwise objects can be thrown around inside the vehicle and cause personal injury or damage to the load or car.

- The payload is the difference between the permitted gross
vehicle weight (see identification plate ◊ 286) and the EC kerb weight.

To calculate the payload, enter the data for your vehicle in the Weights table at the front of this manual.

The EC kerb weight includes weights for the driver (68 kg), luggage (7 kg) and all fluids (tank 90 % full).

Optional equipment and accessories increase the kerb weight.

- Driving with a roof load increases the sensitivity of the vehicle to cross-winds and has a detrimental effect on vehicle handling due to the vehicle's higher centre of gravity. Distribute the load evenly and secure it properly with retaining straps. Adjust the tyre pressure and vehicle speed according to the load conditions. Check and retighten the straps frequently.

Do not drive faster than 120 km/h.

The permissible roof load is 75 kg for the 3-door / 5-door hatchback and 4-door notchback, for the Sports tourer it is 100 kg. The roof load is the combined weight of the roof rack and the load.
Instruments and controls

Controls ..................................... 102
Warning lights, gauges and indicators ............................................. 110
Information displays ................... 121
Vehicle messages ...................... 128
Trip computer ............................. 132
Vehicle personalisation .............. 134

Steering wheel adjustment

Unlock lever, adjust steering wheel, then engage lever and ensure it is fully locked.
Do not adjust steering wheel unless vehicle is stationary and steering wheel lock has been released.

Steering wheel controls

The Infotainment system, the cruise control and a connected mobile phone can be operated via the controls on the steering wheel.
Further information is available in the Infotainment system manual.
Driver assistance systems ◇ 181.
Heated steering wheel

Activate heating by pressing button. Activation is indicated by the LED in the button.

The recommended grip areas of the steering wheel are heated quicker and to a higher temperature than the other areas.

Heating is operational when the engine is running and during an Autostop.

Stop-start system 165.

Horn

Press .
Windscreen wiper/washer

Windscreen wiper

2 = fast
1 = slow
 combineReducers = interval wiping
= off

For a single wipe when the windscreen wiper is off, press the lever down.

Do not use if the windscreen is frozen.

Switch off in car washes.

Adjustable wiper interval

Wiper lever in position combineReducers.

Turn the adjuster wheel to adjust the desired wipe interval:

short interval = turn adjuster wheel upwards
long interval = turn adjuster wheel downwards

Automatic wiping with rain sensor

= automatic wiping with rain sensor

The rain sensor detects the amount of water on the windscreen and automatically regulates the frequency of the windscreen wiper.

If the wiper frequency is above 20 seconds the wiper arm moves slightly down to park position.
Adjustable sensitivity of the rain sensor

Turn the adjuster wheel to adjust the sensitivity:

- **Low sensitivity** = turn adjuster wheel downwards
- **High sensitivity** = turn adjuster wheel upwards

Keep the sensor free from dust, dirt and ice.

Windscreen and headlight washer

Pull lever. Washer fluid is sprayed onto the windscreen and the wiper wipes a few times.

If the headlights are on, washer fluid is also sprayed onto the headlights, provided that the lever is pulled sufficiently long. Afterwards the headlight washer system is inoperable for 5 wash cycles or until engine or headlights have been switched off and on again.
Instruments and controls

Rear window wiper/washer

Press the rocker switch to activate the rear window wiper:
- upper position = continuous operation
- lower position = intermittent operation
- middle position = off

Push lever. Washer fluid is sprayed onto the rear window and the wiper wipes a few times.

Do not use if the rear window is frozen.

Switch off in car washes.

The rear window wiper comes on automatically when the windscreen wiper is switched on and reverse gear is engaged.

Activation or deactivation of this function can be changed in the menu Settings in the Info-Display.

Vehicle personalisation  134.

The rear window washer system is deactivated when the fluid level is low.

Outside temperature

A drop in temperature is indicated immediately and a rise in temperature after a time delay.
If outside temperature drops to 3 °C, a warning message is displayed in the Driver Information Centre with Uplevel-Display or Uplevel-Combi-Display.

⚠️ Warning
The road surface may already be icy even though the display indicates a few degrees above 0 °C.

**Clock**
Date and time are shown in the Info-Display.

---

**Time and date settings**
**CD 300/CD 400/CD400plus**
Press the **CONFIG** button. The menu **Settings** is displayed.
Select **Time Date**.

Selectable setting options:
- **Set time**: Changes the time shown on the display.
- **Set date**: Changes the date shown on the display.
- **Set time format**: Changes indication of hours between 12 h and 24 h.
- **Set date format**: Changes indication of date between MM/DD/YYYY and DD.MM.YYYY.
- **Display clock**: Switches on/off indication of time on the display.
- **RDS clock synchronization**: The RDS signal of most VHF transmitters automatically sets the time. RDS time synchronisation can take a few minutes. Some transmitters do not send a correct time signal. In such cases, it is recommended to switch off automatic time synchronisation.

Vehicle personalisation  134.

**Time and date settings**
**CD 600/Navi 650/Navi 950**
Press the **Config** button and then select the **Time and Date** menu item to display the respective submenu.
**Instruments and controls**

**Note**
If **RDS Auto Time Adjust** is activated, time and date are automatically set by the system.
See Infotainment system manual for further information.

**Set time**
To adjust the time settings, select the **Set Time** menu item. Turn the multifunction knob to adjust the first setting.
Press the multifunction knob to confirm the input. The coloured background moves to the next setting.

Adjust all settings.

**Set date**
To adjust the time settings, select the **Set Date** menu item. Turn the multifunction knob to adjust the first setting.
Press the multifunction knob to confirm the input. The coloured background moves to the next setting.

Adjust all settings.

**Time format**
To choose the desired time format, select **12 hr / 24 hr Format**. Activate **12 Hour** or **24 Hour**.

Vehicle personalisation 134.

**Power outlets**
A 12 Volt power outlet is located in the front console.
A further 12 Volt power outlet is located in the rear console. Fold the cover downwards.

Sports tourer: A 12 Volt power outlet is located at the left sidewall in the load compartment.

Do not exceed the maximum power consumption of 120 watts.

With ignition off, the power outlets are deactivated. Additionally the power outlets are deactivated in the event of low vehicle battery voltage.

Electric accessories that are connected must comply with the electromagnetic compatibility requirements laid down in DIN VDE 40 839.

Do not connect any current-delivering accessories, e.g. electric charging devices or batteries.

Do not damage the outlet by using unsuitable plugs.

Stop-start system  165.

### Cigarette lighter

The cigarette lighter is located in the front console.

Press in cigarette lighter. It switches off automatically once the element is glowing. Pull out lighter.

### Ashtrays

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Caution</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>To be used only for ash and not for combustible rubbish.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The portable ashtray can be placed in the cupholders.
Warning lights, gauges and indicators

Instrument cluster
In some versions, the needles of the instruments briefly rotate to the end position when the ignition is switched on.

Speedometer
Indicates vehicle speed.

Odometer
The bottom line displays the recorded distance in km.

Trip odometer
The top line displays the recorded distance since the last reset.
To reset, press the SET/CLR button on the turn signal lever for a few seconds ◇ 121.

Some versions are equipped with a reset knob between speedometer and Driver Information Centre: to reset hold the knob depressed for a few seconds with the ignition on. Trip odometer counts up to a distance of 2000 km and then restarts at 0.

Tachometer
Displays the engine speed.
Drive in a low engine speed range for each gear as much as possible.
Instruments and controls

Caution

If the needle is in the red warning zone, the maximum permitted engine speed is exceeded. Engine at risk.

Fuel gauge

Displays the fuel level or gas level in the tank depending on the operation mode.
Control indicator ⚠ illuminates if the level in the tank is low. Refuel immediately if it flashes.

Fuel selector

During liquid gas operation, the system automatically switches over to petrol operation when gas tanks are empty ⚠ 111.
Never run the tank dry.
Because of the fuel remaining in the tank, the top-up quantity may be less than the specified tank capacity.

Press button LPG to switch between petrol and liquid gas operation. The LED ⚠ status shows the current operating mode.

Fuel for liquid gas operation ⚠ 211.

Engine coolant temperature gauge

= petrol operation
= liquid gas operation
= no switching is possible, one type of fuel is empty

As soon as the liquid gas tank is empty, petrol operation is automatically engaged until the ignition is switched off.

Fuel for liquid gas operation ⚠ 211.
In the Uplevel-Display or Uplevel-Combi-Display, the remaining oil life duration is displayed in the **Vehicle Information Menu**.

In the Midlevel-Display, the remaining engine oil life duration is displayed by the control indicator 🚗, therefore the ignition must be switched on, with the engine not running.

The menu and function can be selected via the buttons on the turn signal lever.

To display the remaining engine oil life duration:

Press the **MENU** button to select the **Vehicle Information Menu**.

Turn the adjuster wheel to select **Remaining Oil Life**.

The system must be reset every time the engine oil is changed to allow proper functionality. Seek the assistance of a workshop.

Press the **SET/CLR** button to reset. Therefore the ignition must be switched on, with the engine not running.

When the system has calculated that engine oil life has been diminished, **Change Engine Oil Soon** or a warning
code appears in the Driver Information Centre. Have engine oil and filter changed by a workshop within one week or 500 km (whichever occurs first).
Driver Information Centre ◊ 121.
Service information ◊ 283.

Control indicators
The control indicators described are not present in all vehicles. The description applies to all instrument versions. Depending on the equipment, the position of the control indicators may vary. When the ignition is switched on, most control indicators will illuminate briefly as a functionality test.

The control indicator colours mean:
red = danger, important reminder
yellow = warning, information, fault
green = confirmation of activation
blue = confirmation of activation
white = confirmation of activation
Control indicators in the instrument cluster
Control indicators in the centre console

**Turn signal**

illumines or flashes green.

**Illuminates briefly**
The parking lights are switched on.

**Flashes**
A turn signal or the hazard warning flashers are activated.

Rapid flashing: failure of a turn signal light or associated fuse, failure of turn signal light on trailer.

Bulb replacement  231, Fuses  251.

**Turn signals**  147.

**Seat belt reminder**

**Seat belt reminder on front seats**

 for driver's seat illuminates or flashes red.

 for front passenger seat illuminates or flashes red, when the seat is occupied.

**Illuminates**
After the ignition has been switched on until the seat belt has been fastened.

**Flashes**
After having started the engine for a maximum of 100 seconds until the seat belt has been fastened.

**Airbag and belt tensioners**

illuminates red.

When the ignition is switched on, the control indicator illuminates for approx. 4 seconds. If it does not illuminate, does not go out after 4 seconds or illuminates whilst driving, there is a fault in the airbag system. Seek the assistance of a workshop. The airbags and belt pretensioners may fail to trigger in the event of an accident.

Deployment of the belt pretensioners or airbags is indicated by continuous illumination of .

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Warning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Have the cause of the fault remedied immediately by a workshop.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Airbag deactivation**

illuminates yellow.

Illuminates for approx. 60 seconds after the ignition is switched on. The front passenger airbag is activated.

Belt pretensioners, airbag system  49,  52.
Instruments and controls

*illuminates yellow.
The front passenger airbag is deactivated 54.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Danger</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Risk of fatal injury for a child using a child restraint system together with activated front passenger airbag.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Risk of fatal injury for an adult person with deactivated front passenger airbag.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Charging system**

*illuminates red.

Illuminates when the ignition is switched on and extinguishes shortly after the engine starts.

**Malfunction indicator light**

*illuminates or flashes yellow.

Illuminates when the ignition is switched on and extinguishes shortly after the engine starts.

**Illuminates when the engine is running**

Stop, switch off engine. Vehicle battery is not charging. Engine cooling may be interrupted. The brake servo unit may cease to be effective. Seek the assistance of a workshop.

**Flashes when the engine is running**

Fault that could lead to catalytic converter damage. Ease up on the accelerator until the flashing stops. Seek the assistance of a workshop immediately.

**Service vehicle soon**

*illuminates yellow.

Additionally a warning message or a warning code is displayed. The vehicle needs a service. Seek the assistance of a workshop. Vehicle messages 128.

**Brake and clutch system**

*illuminates red.

The brake and clutch fluid level is too low 228.
**Warning**

Stop. Do not continue your journey. Consult a workshop.

Illuminates after the ignition is switched on if the manual parking brake is applied.

### Electric parking brake

#### Illuminates

Electric parking brake is applied.

#### Flashes

Electric parking brake is not fully applied or released. Switch on ignition, depress brake pedal and attempt to reset the system by first releasing and then applying the electric parking brake. If it remains flashing, do not drive and seek the assistance of a workshop.

### Electric parking brake fault

#### Illuminates

Electric parking brake is operating with degraded performance.

### Antilock brake system (ABS)

#### Illuminates

Electric parking brake is in service mode.

#### Flashes

Electric parking brake is in service mode. Stop vehicle, apply and release the electric parking brake to reset.

### Warning

Have the cause of the fault remedied immediately by a workshop.

---

**Operate pedal**

- **Illuminates or flashes yellow.**

### Antilock brake system (ABS)

#### Illuminates

Antilock brake system indicates.

#### Flashes

Antilock brake system is in service mode.

---

**Illuminates**

Brake pedal needs to be depressed to release the electric parking brake.

#### Flashes

Brake pedal needs to be depressed for a main start of the engine.

---

**Illuminates**

Clutch pedal needs to be depressed to start the engine in Autostop mode.

#### Flashes

Clutch pedal needs to be depressed for a main start of the engine.

---

**Warning**

Have the cause of the fault remedied immediately by a workshop.
Instruments and controls

Upshift

▲ illuminates green as control indicator, or is shown as a symbol in the Driver Information Centre with Uplevel-Display or Uplevel-Combi-Display, when upshifting is recommended for fuel saving reasons.

On some versions gear shift indication is popped up as full page in the Driver Information Centre.
EcoFlex drive assistant 3 132.

Power steering

Ξ! illuminates yellow.

Illuminates with power steering reduced
Power steering is reduced due to overheating of the system. Control indicator extinguishes when the system has cooled down.
Stop-start system 3 165.

Illuminates with power steering disabled
Failure in the power steering system. Consult a workshop.

Lane departure warning

Ξ! illuminates green or flashes yellow.

Illuminates green
System is switched on and ready to operate.

Flashes yellow
System recognises an unintended lane change.

Ultrasonic parking assist

P▲ illuminates yellow.
Fault in system or Fault due to sensors that are dirty or covered by ice or snow or Interference due to external sources of ultrasound. Once the source of interference is removed, the system will operate normally.
Have the cause of the fault in the system remedied by a workshop.
Ultrasonic parking assist 3 197.

Electronic Stability Control off

Ξ! illuminates yellow.
The system is deactivated.

Electronic Stability Control and Traction Control system

P▲ illuminates yellow or flashes yellow.

Illuminates
A fault in the system is present. Continued driving is possible. Driving stability, however, may deteriorate depending on road surface conditions.
Have the cause of the fault remedied by a workshop.

**Flashes**
The system is actively engaged. Engine output may be reduced and the vehicle may be braked automatically to a small degree.

Electronic Stability Control 177, Traction Control system 176.

**Traction Control system off**
뜬 yellow.
The system is deactivated.

**Preheating**
.raises yellow.
Preheating is activated. Only activates when outside temperature is low.

**Diesel particle filter**
国足 yellow.
The diesel particle filter requires cleaning.

Continue driving until extingishes. If possible, do not allow engine speed to drop below 2000 rpm.

**Illuminates**
The diesel particle filter is full. Start cleaning process as soon as possible.

**Flashes**
The maximum filling level of the filter is reached. Start cleaning process immediately to avoid damage to the engine.

Diesel particle filter 168, Stop-start system 165.

**Tyre pressure monitoring system**
国足 or flashes yellow.

**Illuminates**
Tyre pressure loss. Stop immediately and check tyre pressure.

**Flashes**
Fault in system or tyre without pressure sensor mounted (e.g. spare wheel). After 60-90 seconds the control indicator illuminates continuously. Consult a workshop.

**Engine oil pressure**
国足 illuminates red.
Illuminates when the ignition is switched on and extinguishes shortly after the engine starts.

**Illuminates when the engine is running**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Caution</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Engine lubrication may be interrupted. This may result in damage to the engine and/or locking of the drive wheels.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. Depress clutch.
2. Select neutral gear, set selector lever to N.
3. Move out of the flow of traffic as quickly as possible without impeding other vehicles.

4. Switch off ignition.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Warning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

When the engine is off, considerably more force is needed to brake and steer. During an Autostop the brake servo unit will still be operational.

Do not remove key until vehicle is stationary, otherwise the steering wheel lock could engage unexpectedly.

Check oil level before seeking the assistance of a workshop 225.

**Low fuel**

- illuminates or flashes yellow.

**Illuminates**

Level in fuel tank is too low.

**Flashes**

Fuel used up. Refuel immediately. Never run the tank dry.

Catalytic converter 169.

Bleeding the diesel fuel system 230.

**Immobiliser**

- flashes yellow.

Fault in the immobiliser system. The engine cannot be started.

**Reduced engine power**

- illuminates yellow.

The engine power is limited. Consult a workshop.

**Exterior light**

- illuminates green.

The exterior lights are on 140.

**High beam**

- illuminates blue.

Illuminates when high beam is on or during headlight flash 141, or when high beam is on with high beam assist or intelligent light range 143.

**High beam assist**

- illuminates green.

The high beam assist or intelligent light range is activated 141, 143.

**Adaptive forward lighting**

- illuminates or flashes yellow.

**Illuminates**

Fault in system.

Seek the assistance of a workshop.

**Flashes**

System switched to symmetrical low beam.

Control indicator  flashes for approx. 4 seconds after the ignition is switched on as a reminder that the system has been activated 143.

Automatic light control 141.
Fog light

\[\text{illuminates green.} \]

The front fog lights are on 147.

Rear fog light

\[\text{illuminates yellow.} \]

The rear fog light is on 148.

Low washer fluid

\[\text{illuminates yellow.} \]

The washer fluid level is low.

Washer fluid 228.

Cruise control

\[\text{illuminates white or green.} \]

Illuminates white

The system is on.

Illuminates green

Adaptive cruise control is active.

Adaptive cruise control 184.

Adaptive cruise control

\[\text{illuminates white or green.} \]

Illuminates white

The system is on.

Illuminates green

Adaptive cruise control is active.

Adaptive cruise control 184.

Vehicle detected ahead

\[\text{illuminates green.} \]

A vehicle ahead is detected in the same lane.

Adaptive cruise control 184,

Forward collision alert 191.

Door open

\[\text{illuminates red.} \]

A door or the tailgate is open.

Information displays

Driver Information Centre

The Driver Information Centre (DIC) is located in the instrument cluster between speedometer and tachometer. It is available as Midlevel-Display, Uplevel-Display or Uplevel-Combi-Display.

Midlevel-Display indicates:

- overall odometer
- trip odometer
- some control indicators
- vehicle information
■ trip/fuel information
■ vehicle messages, displayed as code numbers  128.

In the Uplevel-Display the following main menus can be selected by pushing the MENU button:
- Vehicle Information Menu
- Trip/Fuel Information Menu
- Performance Menu

In the Uplevel-Combi-Display, menu pages can be selected by pushing the MENU button. Menu symbols are indicated in the top line of the display:
- ⛽ Vehicle Information Menu
- ⌂ Trip/Fuel Information Menu
- ⚫ ECO Information Menu
- ⚡ Performance Menu

Some of the displayed functions differ when the vehicle is being driven or at a standstill. Some functions are only available when the vehicle is being driven.

Vehicle personalisation  134.
Memorised settings  25.

Selecting menus and functions
The menus and functions can be selected via the buttons on the turn signal lever.

Press the MENU button to switch between the menus or to return from a submenu to the next higher menu level.
Turn the adjuster wheel to highlight a menu option or to set a numeric value.

Press the SET/CLR button to select a function or to confirm a message.

**Vehicle Information Menu**

Press the MENU button to select the **Vehicle Information Menu**, or on Uplevel-Combi-Display select 🚕. Turn the adjuster wheel to select a submenu. Press the SET/CLR button to confirm.

Follow the instructions given in the submenus.

Possible submenus can be, depending on the version:

- **Unit**: displayed units can be changed
- **Tire Pressure**: checks tyre pressure of all wheels during driving ⬇️ 260
- **Tire Load**: select tyre pressure category according to the actually inflated tyre pressure ⬇️ 260

**Remaining Oil Life**: indicates when to change the engine oil and filter ⬇️ 112
■ **Speed Warning**: if exceeding the preset speed, a warning chime will be activated

■ **Traffic Sign Assistant**: displays detected traffic signs for the current route section 206

■ **Following Dist.**: displays the distance to a preceding moving vehicle 194

Selection and indication can be different between Midlevel-, Uplevel-, and Uplevel-Combi-Display.

**Trip/Fuel Information Menu**

Press the **MENU** button to select the **Trip/Fuel Information Menu**, or select / on Uplevel-Combi-Display.

Turn the adjuster wheel to select a submenu. Press the **SET/CLR** button to confirm.

![Trip 1](image)

- **Trip odometer 1**
- **Trip odometer 2**
- **Digital speed**

Trip odometer 2 and digital speed are only available on vehicles with Uplevel-Display or Uplevel-Combi-Display.

Reset trip odometer by pressing the **SET/CLR** button on the turn signal lever for a few seconds or by pressing the reset knob between speedometer and Driver Information Centre with the ignition on.

On vehicles with trip computer more submenus are available.

Selection and indication can be different between Midlevel-, Uplevel-, and Uplevel-Combi-Display.

**Trip/Fuel Information Menu, Trip Computer** 132.

**ECO Information Menu**

Press the **MENU** button to select **ECO** in the top line of the Uplevel-Combi-Display.

Turn the adjuster wheel to select a submenu. Press the **SET/CLR** button to confirm.
Submenus are:

- **Shift indication**: Current gear is indicated inside an arrow. The figure above recommends upshifting for fuel saving reasons.

- **Eco index display**: The current fuel consumption is indicated on a segment display. For economical driving adapt your driving characteristic to keep the filled segments within the Eco area. The more segments are filled, the higher the fuel consumption. Simultaneously the current consumption value is indicated.

- **Top Consumers**: List of top comfort consumers currently switched on is displayed in descending order. Fuel saving potential is indicated. A switched off consumer disappears from the list and the consumption value will be updated.

  During sporadic driving conditions, the engine will activate the heated rear window automatically to increase the engine load. In this event, the heated rear window is indicated as one of the top consumers, without activation by the driver.

- **Economy Trend**: Displays the average consumption development over a distance of 50 km. Filled segments display the consumption in 5 km steps and shows the effect of topography or driving behaviour on fuel consumption.
Instruments and controls

Performance Menu

Press the MENU button to select the Performance Menu, or select \Uplevel-Combi-Display. Turn the adjuster wheel to select a submenu. Press the SET/CLR button to confirm.

Submenus are:
- **Acceleration**: Display of current acceleration in all directions.
- **Lap Timer**: Display of lap times, top speed, average speed and average time. Follow the instructions given in the submenu.

- **Coolant Temp.**: Display of coolant temperature.
- **Battery Volt.**: Display of vehicle battery voltage.

Depending on the Infotainment system, the Graphic-Info-Display is available in two versions.

Graphic-Info-Display, Colour-Info-Display

Depending on the vehicle configuration the vehicle has a Graphic- or Colour-Info-Display. The Info-Display is located in the instrument panel above the Infotainment system.

Graphic-Info-Display

Graphic-Info-Display indicates:
- **time** 107
- **outside temperature** 106
- **date** 107
- **Infotainment system, see description in the Infotainment system manual**
- **settings for vehicle personalisation** 134
Colour-Info-Display

The Colour-Info-Display indicates in colour:
- time 107
- outside temperature 106
- date 107
- Infotainment system, see description in the Infotainment system manual
- navigation, see description in the Infotainment system manual
- system settings

- vehicle messages 128
- settings for vehicle personalisation 134

The type of information and how it is displayed depends on the equipment of the vehicle and the settings made.

**Selecting menus and settings**

Menus and settings are accessed via the display.

```
09:20  Audio FM  17 °C
FM

1 BBC Radio 2  FAV 1
Leave me now - The Favourites
```

Selections are made via:
- menus
- function buttons and multifunction knob of the Infotainment system

**Selecting with the Infotainment system**

Select a function via the Infotainment system buttons. The menu of the selected function is displayed.

The multifunction knob is used to select an item and to confirm.

**Multifunction knob**

The multifunction knob is the central control element for the menus:

- **Turn**
  - To mark a menu option
  - To set a numeric value or to display a menu option
Instruments and controls

Press (the outer ring)
- To select or activate the marked option
- To confirm a set value
- To switch a system function on/off

BACK button
Press button to:
- exit a menu without changing settings
- return from a submenu to a higher menu level
- delete the last character in a character sequence

Press and hold the button for a few seconds to delete the entire entry.

Vehicle personalisation  134.
Memorised settings  25.

Smartphone controller
The smartphone controller allows a smartphone to access vehicle data via WLAN or Bluetooth connection. This data can then be displayed and analysed on the smartphone.

Vehicle messages
Messages are indicated mainly in the Driver Information Centre (DIC), in some cases together with a warning and signal buzzer.

Vehicle messages on the Midlevel-Display

The vehicle messages are displayed as code numbers.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>No.</th>
<th>Vehicle message</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>No radio remote control detected, depress clutch pedal for a restart</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Engine coolant level low</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Air conditioning off</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>Steering wheel is locked</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No.</td>
<td>Vehicle message</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>Depress brake pedal to release electric parking brake</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>Turn steering wheel, switch ignition off and then on</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>Turn steering wheel, start engine again</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>Vehicle overloaded</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>Compressor overheated</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>Centre high-mounted brake light failure</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16</td>
<td>Brake light failure</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17</td>
<td>Headlight levelling malfunction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18</td>
<td>Left low beam failure</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19</td>
<td>Rear fog light failure</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20</td>
<td>Right low beam failure</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21</td>
<td>Left sidelight failure</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22</td>
<td>Right sidelight failure</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23</td>
<td>Reversing light failure</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24</td>
<td>Number plate light failure</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25</td>
<td>Left front turn signal failure</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26</td>
<td>Left rear turn signal failure</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27</td>
<td>Right front turn signal failure</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28</td>
<td>Right rear turn signal failure</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>29</td>
<td>Check trailer brake light</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30</td>
<td>Check trailer reversing light</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31</td>
<td>Check left trailer turn signal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>32</td>
<td>Check right trailer turn signal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>33</td>
<td>Check trailer rear fog light</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34</td>
<td>Check trailer rear light</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35</td>
<td>Replace battery in radio remote control</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>48</td>
<td>Clean side blind zone alert system</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>49</td>
<td>Lane departure warning unavailable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>53</td>
<td>Tighten gas cap</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>54</td>
<td>Water in diesel fuel filter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>55</td>
<td>Diesel particle filter is full</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>56</td>
<td>Tyre pressure imbalance on front axle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>57</td>
<td>Tyre pressure imbalance on rear axle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>58</td>
<td>Tyres without TPMS sensors detected</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>59</td>
<td>Open and then close driver window</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>60</td>
<td>Open and then close front passenger window</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>61</td>
<td>Open and then close rear left window</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>62</td>
<td>Open and then close rear right window</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>65</td>
<td>Theft attempted</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>66</td>
<td>Service theft alarm system</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>67</td>
<td>Service steering wheel lock</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Instruments and controls

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>No.</th>
<th>Vehicle message</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>68</td>
<td>Service power steering</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>69</td>
<td>Service suspension system</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>70</td>
<td>Service level control system</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>71</td>
<td>Service rear axle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>74</td>
<td>Service AFL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>75</td>
<td>Service air conditioning</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>76</td>
<td>Service side blind zone alert system</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>77</td>
<td>Service lane departure warning</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>79</td>
<td>Top up engine oil</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>81</td>
<td>Service transmission</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>82</td>
<td>Change engine oil soon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>83</td>
<td>Service adaptive cruise control</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>84</td>
<td>Engine power is reduced</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>89</td>
<td>Service vehicle soon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>94</td>
<td>Shift to park before exiting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>95</td>
<td>Service airbag</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>No.</th>
<th>Vehicle message</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>128</td>
<td>Bonnet open</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>134</td>
<td>Park assist fault, clean bumper</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>136</td>
<td>Service parking assist</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>145</td>
<td>Check washer fluid level</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>174</td>
<td>Low vehicle battery</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>258</td>
<td>Park assist off</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Vehicle messages on the Uplevel-Display or Uplevel-Combi-Display

The vehicle messages are displayed as text. Follow the instructions given in the messages.

The system displays messages regarding the following topics:

- Fluid levels
- Anti-theft alarm system
- Brakes
- Drive systems
- Ride control systems
- Cruise control
- Object detection systems
- Lighting, bulb replacement
- Wiper/washer system
- Doors, windows
- Radio remote control
- Seat belts
- Airbag systems
- Engine and transmission
- Tyre pressure
- Diesel particle filter
- Vehicle battery status
Vehicle messages on the Colour-Info-Display
Some important messages appear additionally in the Colour-Info-Display. Press the multifunction knob to confirm a message. Some messages only pop up for a few seconds.

Warning chimes
When starting the engine or whilst driving
Only one warning chime will sound at a time.

The warning chime regarding unfastened seat belts has priority over any other warning chime.

- If seat belt is not fastened.
- If a door or the tailgate is not fully closed when starting off.
- If a certain speed is exceeded with parking brake applied.
- If a programmed speed is exceeded.

- If a warning message or a warning code appears in the Driver Information Centre.
- If the parking assist detects an object.
- If unintended lane change occurs.
- If the reverse gear is engaged and the rear end carrier extended.
- If the diesel particle filter has reached the maximum filling level.

When the vehicle is parked and/or the driver's door is opened
- When the key is in the ignition switch.
- With exterior lights on.

During an Autostop
- If the driver's door is opened.

Battery voltage
When the vehicle battery voltage is running low, a warning message or warning code 174 will appear in the Driver Information Centre.

1. Switch off immediately any electric consumers which are not required for a safe ride, e.g. seat heating, heated rear window or other main consumers.
2. Charge the vehicle battery by driving continuously for a while or by using a charging device.

The warning message or warning code will disappear after the engine has been started twice consecutively without a voltage drop.

If the vehicle battery cannot be recharged, have the cause of the fault remedied by a workshop.

1. Switch off immediately any electric consumers which are not required for a safe ride, e.g. seat heating, heated rear window or other main consumers.
2. Charge the vehicle battery by driving continuously for a while or by using a charging device.

The warning message or warning code will disappear after the engine has been started twice consecutively without a voltage drop.

If the vehicle battery cannot be recharged, have the cause of the fault remedied by a workshop.
Trip computer

The menus and functions can be selected via the buttons on the turn signal lever 121.

Press the MENU button to select the Trip/Fuel Information Menu, or select \ or \ on the Uplevel-Combi-Display.

Turn the adjuster wheel to select one of the submenus:

- Trip odometer 1
- Trip odometer 2
- Range
- Average consumption
- Instantaneous consumption
- Average speed
- Digital speed
- Traffic sign assistant
- Route guidance

Trip/Fuel Information Menu on Uplevel-Display

Trip/Fuel Information Menu on Uplevel-Combi-Display

Turn the adjuster wheel to select the submenus:
■ Trip odometer 1
■ Average consumption 1
■ Average speed 1

■ Trip odometer 2
■ Average consumption 2
■ Average speed 2

■ Digital speed
■ Range
■ Instantaneous consumption
■ Route guidance

**Trip computer 1 and 2**
The information of two trip computers can be reset separately for odometer, average consumption and average speed by pressing the SET/CLR button, making it possible to display different trip information for different drivers.

**Trip odometer**
Trip odometer displays the recorded distance since a certain reset.
Trip odometer counts up to a distance of 2000 km and then restarts at 0.
To reset, press the SET/CLR button for a few seconds.
Range
Range is calculated from current fuel tank content and current consumption. The display shows average values.
After refuelling, the range is updated automatically after a brief delay.
When the fuel level in the tank is low, a message appears on vehicles with Uplevel-Display or Uplevel-Combi-Display.
When the tank has to be refuelled immediately, a warning code or warning message is displayed on vehicles with Midlevel- and Uplevel-Display or Uplevel-Combi-Display.
Additionally the control indicator in the fuel gauge illuminates or flashes

Average consumption
Display of average consumption. The measurement can be reset at any time and starts with a default value.
To reset, press the SET/CLR button for a few seconds.

Instantaneous consumption
Display of the instantaneous consumption.

Average speed
Display of average speed. The measurement can be reset at any time.
To reset, press the SET/CLR button for a few seconds.

Digital speed
Digital display of the instantaneous speed.

Traffic sign assistant
Indicates detected traffic signs for the current route section 206.

Route guidance
Additionally to the navigation information in the Color-Info-Display, route guidance is displayed in the Driver Information Centre.

Vehicle personalisation
The vehicle's behaviour can be personalised by changing the settings in the Info-Display.
Some of the personal settings for different drivers can be memorised individually for each vehicle key. Memorised settings 25.
Depending on vehicle equipment and country-specific regulations some of the functions described below may not be available.
Some functions are only displayed or active when the engine is running.

Personal settings in the Graphic-Info-Display
CD 300/CD 400/CD400plus
Press the **CONFIG** button. The menu **Settings** is displayed.

The following settings can be selected by turning and pressing the multifunction knob:
- Sport mode settings
- Languages
- Time Date
- Radio settings
- Phone settings
- Vehicle settings

In the corresponding submenus the following settings can be changed:

### Sport mode settings
The driver can select the functions which will be activated in Sport mode 📈 179.
- **Sport suspension**: Damping becomes harder.
- **Sport powertrain performance**: Accelerator pedal and gear change characteristics become more responsive.

### Sport steering
Steering support is reduced.

### Swap backlight colour main instr.
Changes the instrument illumination colour.

### Languages
Selection of the desired language.

### Time Date
See Clock 🕒 107.

### Radio settings
See description Infotainment system manual for further information.

### Phone settings
See description Infotainment system manual for further information.
Vehicle settings

- **Climate and air quality**
  - **Auto fan speed**: Modifies the level of the cabin airflow of the climate control in automatic mode.
  - **Climate control mode**: Controls the state of the cooling compressor when the vehicle is started. Last setting (recommended) or at vehicle start either always ON or always OFF.
  - **Auto rear demist**: Activates automatically rear heated window.

- **Comfort settings**
  - **Chime volume**: Changes the volume of warning chimes.
  - **Personalization by driver**: Activates or deactivates the personalisation function.
  - **Rear auto wipe in reverse**: Activates or deactivates automatically switching on of the rear window wiper when reverse gear is engaged.

- **Park assist / Collision detection**
  - **Park assist**: Activates or deactivates the ultrasonic parking assist.
  - **Auto collision preparation**: Activates or deactivates the automatic brake functionality of the vehicle in the event of imminent collision danger. The following is selectable: the system will take over brake control, warn by chimes only or is deactivated.
  - **Side blind zone alert**: Changes the settings for the side blind spot alert system.

- **Exterior ambient lighting**
  - **Duration upon exit of vehicle**: Activates or deactivates and changes the duration of exit lighting.
  - **Exterior lighting by unlocking**: Activates or deactivates the welcome lighting.

- **Power door locks**
  - **Auto door lock**: Activates or deactivates the automatic door unlocking function after switching off ignition. Activates or deactivates the automatic door locking function after driving off.
Instruments and controls

**Stop door lock if door open:**
Activates or deactivates the automatic door locking function while a door is open.

**Delayed door lock:** Activates or deactivates the delayed door locking function.

**Remote locking, unlocking, starting**

**Remote unlock feedback:** Activates or deactivates the hazard warning flasher feedback whilst unlocking.

**Remote door unlock:** Changes the configuration to unlock only the driver's door or the whole vehicle whilst unlocking.

**Auto relock doors:** Activates or deactivates the automatic relock function after unlocking without opening the vehicle.

**Restore factory settings**

**Restore factory settings:** Resets all settings to the default settings.

**Settings in the Colour-Info-Display**

CD 600/Navi 650/Navi 950

Press the **CONFIG** button on the Infotainment system faceplate to enter the Configuration menu. Turn the multifunction knob to scroll upwards or downwards in the list. Press the multifunction knob (Navi 950 / Navi 650: press the outer ring) to select a menu item.

- **Display Settings**
- **Vehicle Settings**
  In the corresponding submenus the following settings can be changed:

**Sport Mode Profile**

**Engine Sport Performance:**
Accelerator pedal and gear change characteristics become more responsive.

**Sport Mode Back Lighting:**
Changes the instrument illumination colour.

**Sport Suspension:** Damping becomes harder.

**Sport Steering:** Steering support is reduced.

**Languages**
Selection of the desired language.

**Time and Date**
See Infotainment system manual for further information.

**Radio Settings**
See Infotainment system manual for further information.
Instruments and controls

Phone Settings
See Infotainment system manual for further information.

Navigation Settings
See Infotainment system manual for further information.

Display Settings
- **Home Page Menu:**
  See Infotainment system manual for further information.
- **Rear Camera Options:**
  Press to adjust the rear camera options  204.
- **Display Off:**
  See Infotainment system manual for further information.
- **Map Settings:**
  See Infotainment system manual for further information.

Vehicle Settings
- **Climate and Air Quality**
  - **Auto Fan Speed:** Modifies the fan regulation. Changed setting will be active after switching the ignition off and on again.
  - **Air Conditioning Mode:** Activates or deactivates cooling when switching on the ignition or uses the last chosen setting.
  - **Auto Demist:** Activates or deactivates auto demist.
  - **Auto Rear Demist:** Activates automatically the rear heated window.
- **Comfort and Convenience**
  - **Chime Volume:** Changes the volume of warning chimes.
  - **Personalisation by Driver:** Activates or deactivates the personalisation function.
  - **Auto Reverse Gear Wiper:** Activates or deactivates automatic switching on of the rear window wiper when reverse gear is engaged.
- **Collision Detection Systems**
  - **Park Assist:** Activates or deactivates the ultrasonic sensors.
  - **Automatic Collision Preparation:** Activates or deactivates the automatic brake functionality of the vehicle in the event of imminent collision danger. The following is selectable: the system will take over brake control, warn by chimes only or is deactivated completely.
  - **Side Blind Zone Alert:** Activates or deactivates the side blind spot alert system.
- **Lighting**
  - **Vehicle Locator Lights:** Activates or deactivates the entry lighting.
  - **Exit Lighting:** Activates or deactivates and changes the duration of exit lighting.
- **Power Door Locks**
  - **Open Door Anti Lock Out:** Activates or deactivates the automatic door locking function while a door is open.
  - **Auto Door Lock:** Activates or deactivates the automatic door unlocking function after switching off ignition. Activates or deactivates
the automatic door locking function after driving-off.

**Delay Door Lock**: Activates or deactivates the delayed door locking function.

- **Remote Lock/Unlock/Start**
  - **Remote Lock Feedback**: Activates or deactivates the hazard warning flasher feedback whilst locking.
  - **Remote Unlock Feedback**: Activates or deactivates the hazard warning flasher feedback whilst unlocking.
  - **Remote Door Unlock**: Changes the configuration to unlock only the driver’s door or the whole vehicle whilst unlocking.
  - **Relock Remotely Unlocked Doors**: Activates or deactivates the automatic relock function after unlocking without opening the vehicle.

- **Return to Factory Settings?**: Resets all settings to the default settings.
Lighting

Exterior lighting .......................... 140
Interior lighting ........................... 149
Lighting features ........................ 150

Exterior lighting

Light switch

Turn light switch:

0 = lights off
0 = sidelights
0 = low beam

Control indicator 0 120.

Light switch with Automatic light control

Turn light switch:

AUTO = automatic light control: low beam is switched on and off automatically depending on external lighting conditions.
0 = activation or deactivation of the automatic light control. Switch turns back to AUTO.
0 = sidelights
0 = low beam
In the Driver Information Centre with Uplevel-Display or Uplevel-Combi-Display, the current status of the automatic light control is displayed. When switching on the ignition, automatic light control is active. When low beam is on, lights up. Control indicator 120.

**Tail lights**
Tail lights are illuminated together with low/high beam and sidelights.

**Automatic light control**

When the automatic light control function is switched on and the engine is running, the system switches between daytime running light and headlights automatically depending on the lighting conditions and information given by the rain sensor system.

**Daytime running light** 143.

**Automatic headlight activation**
During poor lighting conditions the headlights are switched on. Furthermore the headlights are switched on if the windscreen wipers have been activated for several wipes.

**Tunnel detection**
When a tunnel is entered the headlights are switched on immediately.
Adaptive forward lighting 143.

**High beam**

To switch from low to high beam, push lever.
To switch to low beam, push lever again or pull.

**High beam assist**
Description for version with halogen headlights. High beam assist with adaptive forward lighting 143.
This feature allows high beam to function as the main driving light at night and when vehicle speed is faster than 40 km/h.
It switches to low beam when:

- a sensor detects the lights of oncoming or preceding vehicles
- the vehicle speed is slower than 20 km/h
- it is foggy or snowy
- driving in urban areas

If there are no restrictions detected, the system switches back to high beam.

**Activation**

The high beam assist is activated by pushing the indicator lever twice with a speed above 40 km/h.

The green control indicator illuminates continuously when the assist is activated, the blue one illuminates when high beam is on. Control indicator 120.

**Deactivation**

Push indicator lever once. It is also deactivated when front fog lights are switched on.

If a headlight flash is activated when the high beam is on, the high beam assist will be deactivated.

If a headlight flash is activated when the high beam is off, the high beam assist will stay activated.

The latest setting of the high beam assist will remain after the ignition is switched on again.

**Headlight flash**

To activate the headlight flash, pull lever.

**Headlight range adjustment**

**Manual headlight range adjustment**

To adapt headlight range to the vehicle load to prevent dazzling: turn thumb wheel to required position.

0 = front seats occupied
1 = all seats occupied
2 = all seats occupied and load compartment laden
3 = driver’s seat occupied and load compartment laden.
Dynamic automatic headlight levelling  143.

**Headlights when driving abroad**

The asymmetrical headlight beam extends visibility at the edge of the road at the passenger side. However, when driving in countries where traffic drives on the opposite side of the road, adjust the headlights to prevent dazzling of oncoming traffic.

**Vehicles with halogen headlight system**
The headlights do not have to be adjusted.

**Vehicles with Xenon headlight system**

1. Key in ignition switch.
2. Pull turn signal lever and hold (headlight flash).
3. Switch on ignition.
4. After approx. 5 seconds the control indicator  starts flashing and an acoustic signal sounds.

Control indicator  120.

Every time the ignition is switched on,  flashes as a reminder for approx. 4 seconds.

For deactivation operate the same procedure as described above.  will not flash when function is deactivated.

**Daytime running lights**

Daytime running lights increase visibility of the vehicle during daylight. They are switched on automatically when ignition is on.

If the vehicle is equipped with automatic light control function, the system switches between daytime running light and low/high beam automatically depending on the lighting conditions and information given by the rain sensor system. Automatic light control  141.

**Adaptive forward lighting**
The Adaptive forward lighting functions are only available with Bi-Xenon headlights. Light range, light distribution and intensity of light are variably triggered depending on the light conditions, weather and road type.
With the light switch in position AUTO all lighting functions are available.

The following functions are available also with light switch in position  
■ Dynamic curve lighting
■ Cornering light
■ Reversing function
■ Dynamic automatic headlight levelling

**Playstreet lighting**
Activated automatically at low speed up to approx. 30 km/h. The light beam is turned at an angle of 8° to the roadside.

**Town lighting**
Activated automatically at a speed range between approx. 40 and 55 km/h and when street lights are detected by the light sensor. The light range is reduced by an extended light distribution.

**Country lighting**
Activated automatically at a speed range between approx. 55 and 115 km/h. The beam of light and the brightness is different between the left and the right side.

**Motorway lighting**
Activated automatically at a speed above approx. 115 km/h and minimal steering movements. It switches on after a delay or directly when the vehicle is powerfully accelerated. The light beam is longer and brighter.

**Adverse weather lighting**
Activated automatically up to a speed of approx. 70 km/h, when the rain sensor recognizes condensation or the wiper operates continuously. The range, distribution and light intensity is regulated variably depending on visibility.

**Dynamic curve lighting**

The light beam pivots based on steering wheel angle and speed, improving lighting in curves. Control indicator ⚒ 120.

**Corner lighting**

On tight bends or when turning off, depending on the steering angle or the turn signal light, an additional left or right reflector is switched on which illuminates the road at a right angle to the direction of travel. It is activated up to a speed of 40 km/h.
Reversing function
If the headlights are on and reverse gear is engaged, both corner lights are switched on. They remain illuminated for 20 seconds after disengaging reverse gear or until driving faster than 17 km/h in a forward gear.

High Beam Assist
This feature allows high beam as main driving light by night and when vehicle speed is faster than 40 km/h. It switches to low beam when:
- the camera in the windscreen detects the lights of oncoming or preceding vehicles
- the vehicle speed is slower than 20 km/h
- it is foggy or snowy
- driving in urban areas
If there are no restrictions detected, the system switches back to high beam.

Activation
The high beam assist is activated by pushing the indicator lever twice with a speed above 40 km/h.
The green control indicator \( \circ \) illuminates continuously when the assist is activated, the blue one \( \circ \) illuminates when high beam is on.
Control indicator \( \circ \) \( \circ \) 120.

Deactivation
Push indicator lever once. It is also deactivated when front fog lights are switched on.

If a headlight flash is activated when the high beam is on, the high beam assist will be deactivated.
If a headlight flash is activated when the high beam is off, the high beam assist will stay activated.
High beam assist is always active after the ignition is switched on.

Intelligent light ranging with automatic high beam activation
Intelligent light ranging uses the properties of Bi-Xenon headlights to extend the light range of the low beam by up to 400 metres and additionally activates automatic high beam without dazzling or disturbing oncoming or preceding traffic.
High beam is deactivated and the low beam light range is reduced to avoid dazzling when the following restrictions are detected by the front camera in the windscreen:
- a preceding vehicle is recognised,
- an oncoming vehicle is recognised,
- urban areas are entered,
- it is foggy or snowy.
If there are no restrictions detected, the system switches back to high beam.

When the system is active, the front camera monitors the area ahead of the vehicle and ensures an optimum light distribution for maximum driver vision during almost all conditions.

Intelligent light ranging with automatic high beam activation therefore reduces the difference between conventional low and high beam without drastic changes in light-range, distribution and intensity.

A special topographical evaluation function detects preceding vehicles on hills or slopes by recognising the rear light moving ahead. The system adjusts the height of the light range to ensure optimum illumination on the road ahead without dazzling.

**Activation**

Intelligent light ranging and automatic high beam activation are switched on together by pushing the indicator lever twice. They can be switched on with ignition on.

Automatic high beam activation operates at a speed above 40 km/h and deactivates below 20 km/h. Intelligent light ranging operates above 55 km/h.

The green control indicator illuminates continuously when the function is activated, the blue one illuminates when high beam switches on automatically.

**Deactivation**

Push indicator lever once. It is also deactivated when front fog lights are switched on.

**Dynamic automatic headlight levelling**

To prevent oncoming traffic from dazzle, headlight levelling is automatically adjusted based on inclination information measured by front and rear axle, acceleration or deceleration and vehicle speed.
Fault in adaptive forward lighting system
When the system detects a failure in the Adaptive forward lighting system, the system moves to a preset position to avoid dazzling of oncoming traffic. If this is not possible the affected headlight will be automatically switched off. In any case one headlight will stay on. A warning is displayed in the Driver Information Centre.

Hazard warning flashers
Operated with the button.

In the event of an accident with airbag deployment the hazard warning flashers are activated automatically.

Turn and lane-change signals
lever up = right turn signal
lever down = left turn signal
If the lever is moved past the resistance point, the turn signal is switched on constantly. When the steering wheel moves back, the turn signal is automatically deactivated.

For three flashes, e.g. when changing lanes, press the lever until resistance is felt and then release.
When a trailer is connected, turn signal flashes six times when pressing the lever until resistance is felt and then releasing.
Move the lever to the resistance point and hold for longer indication.
Switch the turn signal off manually by moving the lever to its original position.

Front fog lights
Operated with the button.
Light switch in position AUTO: switching on front fog lights will switch headlights on automatically.

Rear fog lights

Operated with the button. Light switch in position AUTO: switching on rear fog light will switch headlights on automatically.

Light switch in position rear fog light can only be switched on with front fog lights.

The vehicle rear fog light is deactivated when towing.

Parking lights

When the vehicle is parked, the parking lights on one side can be activated:

1. Switch off ignition.
2. Move turn signal lever all the way up (right parking lights) or down (left parking lights).

Confirmed by a signal and the corresponding turn signal control indicator.

Reversing lights

The reversing light comes on when the ignition is on and reverse gear is selected.

Misted light covers

The inside of the light housing may mist up briefly in poor, wet and cold weather conditions, in heavy rain or after washing. The mist disappears quickly by itself; to help switch on the headlights.
Interior lighting

Instrument panel illumination control

Brightness of the following lights can be adjusted when the exterior lights are on:
- Instrument panel illumination
- Info-Display
- Illuminated switches and operation elements.

Turn thumb wheel ⦔ and hold until the desired brightness is obtained.

On vehicles with light sensor, the brightness can only be adjusted when the exterior lights are on and the light sensor detects night conditions.

Interior lights

During entry and exit of the vehicle, the front and rear courtesy lights automatically switch on and then off after a delay.

Note
In the event of an accident with airbag deployment the courtesy lights are turned on automatically.

Front courtesy light

Operate rocker switch:
- ⦔ = automatic switching on and off.
- press ⦔ = on.
- press ⦔ = off.

Courtesy light on version with panorama roof

Left and right lamps are separately switchable.

Operate rocker switches:
- centre = automatic switching on and off.
- press I = on.
- press 0 = off.
Rear courtesy lights

Illuminates in conjunction with the front courtesy light depending on rocker switch position.
Press  or  to switch on manually.

Reading lights

Operated with  and  buttons in front and rear courtesy lights.

Sunvisor lights

Illuminates when the cover is opened.

Lighting features

Centre console lighting
Spotlight incorporated in the interior lighting comes on when headlights are switched on.

Entry lighting

Welcome lighting
The following lights are switched on for a short time by unlocking the vehicle with the radio remote control:
- headlights,
- tail lights,
- number plate lights,
- instrument panel light,
- interior lights,
- door and console lights,
- puddle lights.
Some functions work only in the dark and facilitates locating the vehicle.
The lighting switches off immediately when the ignition key is turned to position 1 163.
Activation or deactivation of this function can be changed in the menu Settings in the Info-Display. Vehicle personalisation  134.
The settings can be saved for the key being used  25.
The following lights will additionally switch on when the driver's door is opened:
- all switches
- Driver Information Centre
- door pocket lights
- console lights

Exit lighting
The following lights switch on if the key is removed from the ignition switch:
- Interior lights
- Instrument panel light (only when it is dark)
- Door and console lights
- Puddle lights

They will switch off automatically after a delay and will be activated again if the driver's door is opened.
Headlights, tail lights and number plate lights illuminate the surrounding area for an adjustable time after leaving the vehicle.

Switching on

1. Switch off ignition.
2. Remove ignition key.
3. Open driver's door.
4. Pull turn signal lever.
5. Close driver's door.

If the driver's door is not closed the lights switch off after two minutes.
Exit lighting is switched off immediately if the turn signal lever is pulled while the driver's door is open.
Activation, deactivation and duration of this function can be changed in the menu Settings in the Info-Display. Vehicle personalisation  134.
The settings can be saved for the key being used  25.

Battery discharge protection
Vehicle battery state of charge function
The function guarantees longest vehicle battery life via a generator with controllable power output and optimised power distribution.
To prevent discharge of the vehicle battery when driving, the following systems are reduced automatically in two stages and finally switched off:
Lighting

- Auxiliary heater
- Heated rear window and mirrors
- Heated seats
- Fan

In the second stage a message which confirms the activation of the vehicle battery discharge protection will be displayed in the Driver Information Centre.

**Switching off electric lights**
To prevent discharge of the vehicle battery when the ignition is switched off, some interior lights are switched off automatically after some time.
Climate control

Climate control systems .................. 153
Air vents ........................................... 160
Maintenance ........................................ 161

Climate control systems

Heating and ventilation system

Controls for:
- Temperature
- Air distribution
- Fan speed
- Demisting and defrosting

Heated rear window ▲ 37.

Temperature
red = warm
blue = cold

Heating will not be fully effective until the engine has reached normal operating temperature.

Air distribution
▲ = to windscreen and front door windows
▼ = to head area via adjustable air vents
▼ = to foot well

All combinations are possible.

Fan speed
Adjust the air flow by switching the fan to the desired speed.
Demisting and defrosting

- Press button : fan automatically switches to higher speed, the air distribution is directed towards the windscreen.
- Set temperature control to warmest level.
- Switch on heated rear window .
- Open side air vents as required and direct them towards the door windows.

Air conditioning system

In addition to the heating and ventilation system, the air conditioning system has controls for:

- Cooling •
- Air recirculation •

Heated seats • 48, Heated steering wheel • 103.

Cooling •

Press button • to switch on cooling. Activation is indicated by the LED in the button. Cooling is only functional when the engine is running and climate control fan is switched on.

Press button • again to switch off cooling.

The air conditioning system cools and dehumidifies (dries) as soon as the outside temperature is slightly above the freezing point. Therefore condensation may form and drip from under the vehicle.
If no cooling or drying is required, switch off the cooling system for fuel saving reasons. Activated cooling might inhibit Autostops.

**Air recirculation system 🌊**

Press button 🌊 to activate air recirculation mode. Activation is indicated by the LED in the button. Press button 🌊 again to deactivate recirculation mode.

**⚠️ Warning**

The exchange of fresh air is reduced in air recirculation mode. In operation without cooling the air humidity increases, so the windows may mist up from inside. The quality of the passenger compartment air deteriorates, which may cause the vehicle occupants to feel drowsy.

In warm and very humid ambient air conditions, the windscreen might mist up from outside, when cold air is directed to it. If windscreen mists up from outside, activate windscreen wiper and deactivate 🌬.

**Maximum cooling**

Briefly open the windows so that hot air can disperse quickly.
- Switch on cooling 🌞.
- Air circulation system 🌊 on.
- Press air distribution switch 🌬.
- Set temperature control to coldest level.
- Set fan speed to highest level.
- Open all vents.
Demisting and defrosting the windows 

- Press button \( \text{\textregistered} \): fan automatically switches to higher speed, the air distribution is directed towards the windscreen.
- Switch cooling \( \text{\textregistered} \) on.
- Set temperature control to warmest level.
- Switch on heated rear window \( \text{\textregt} \).
- Open side air vents as required and direct them towards the door windows.

Note
If the \( \text{\textregistered} \) button is pressed while the engine is running, an Autostop will be inhibited until the \( \text{\textregistered} \) button is pressed again.
If the \( \text{\textregistered} \) button is pressed while the engine is in an Autostop, the engine will restart automatically.
Stop-start system \( \text{\textregt} \) 165.

Electronic climate control system
The dual zone climate control allows different climatisation temperatures for driver and front passenger side.
In Automatic mode temperature, fan speed and air distribution are regulated automatically.

Controls for:
- Temperature on driver side
- Air distribution
- Fan speed
- Temperature on front passenger side

\( \text{\textregistered} \) = cooling
AUTO = automatic mode
\( \text{\textregt} \) = manual air recirculation
\( \text{\textregr} \) = demisting and defrosting

Heated rear window \( \text{\textregt} \) \( \text{\textregt} \) 37, Heated seats \( \text{\textregt} \) \( \text{\textregt} \) 48, Heated steering wheel \( \text{\textregt} \) \( \text{\textregt} \) 103.
Each change of settings is shown in the Info-Display for a few seconds. The electronic climate control system is only fully operational when the engine is running.

**Automatic mode AUTO**

Basic setting for maximum comfort:
- Press **AUTO** button, the air distribution and fan speed are regulated automatically.
- Open all air vents to allow optimised air distribution in automatic mode.

- Press 🌡️ to switch on optimal cooling and demisting. Activation is indicated by the LED in the button.
- Set the preselected temperatures for driver and front passenger using the left and right rotary knob. Recommended temperature is 22 °C.

The fan speed regulation in automatic mode can be changed in the menu **Settings**.

Vehicle personalisation 🗣️ 134.

**Temperature preselection**
Set temperatures to the desired value.
If the minimum temperature $L_0$ is set, the climate control system runs at maximum cooling, if cooling $\bigcirc$ is switched on.

If the maximum temperature $H_i$ is set, the climate control system runs at maximum heating.

**Note**
If $\bigcirc$ is switched on, reducing the set cabin temperature can cause the engine to restart from an Autostop or inhibit an Autostop.

**Demisting and defrosting the windows $\bigotimes$**

- Press button $\bigotimes$. Activation is indicated by the LED in the button.
- Press cooling button $\bigcirc$. Activation is indicated by the LED in the button.
- Temperature and air distribution are set automatically and the fan runs at high speed.
- Switch on heated rear window $\square$.
- To return to previous mode: press button $\bigotimes$, to return to automatic mode: press button AUTO.

Setting of automatic rear window heating can be changed in the menu **Settings** in the Info-Display. Vehicle personalisation $\bigotimes$ 134.

**Note**
If the $\bigotimes$ button is pressed while the engine is running, an Autostop will be inhibited until the $\bigotimes$ button is pressed again.
If the $\bigotimes$ button is pressed while the engine is in an Autostop, the engine will restart automatically.

Stop-start system $\bigotimes$ 165.

**Manual settings**
Climate control system settings can be changed by activating the buttons and rotary knobs as follows. Changing a setting will deactivate the automatic mode.

**Fan speed $\bigodot$**

Press lower button to decrease or upper button to increase fan speed as shown in the illustration. The fan speed is indicated by the number of segments in the display.
Pressing the lower button longer: fan and cooling are switched off.
Pressing the upper button longer: the fan runs at maximum speed.
To return to automatic mode: Press AUTO button.

Air distribution $\mathfrak{i}$, $\mathfrak{j}$, $\mathfrak{k}$

Press appropriate button for desired adjustment. Activation is indicated by the LED in the button.
$\mathfrak{i}$ = to windscreen and front door windows.
$\mathfrak{j}$ = to head area via adjustable air vents
$\mathfrak{k}$ = to foot well.
All combinations are possible.

Return to automatic air distribution: press button AUTO.

Cooling

Press button $\mathfrak{c}$ to switch on cooling. Activation is indicated by the LED in the button. Cooling is only functional when the engine is running and climate control fan is switched on.
Press button $\mathfrak{c}$ again to switch off cooling.
The air conditioning system cools and dehumidifies (dries) when outside temperature is above a specific level. Therefore condensation may form and drip from under the vehicle.

If no cooling or drying is required, switch off the cooling system for fuel saving reasons. When the cooling system is switched off, no engine restart will be requested by the climate control system during an Autostop. Exception: defrost system is activated and outside temperature above 0°C requests a restart.
The display will indicate ACON when cooling is activated or ACOFF when the cooling is deactivated.
Activation or deactivation of cooling operation after engine start can be changed in the menu Settings in the Info-Display. Vehicle personalisation $\mathfrak{h}$ 134.
Air recirculation mode

Press button to activate the air recirculation mode. Activation is indicated by the LED in the button. Press button again to deactivate recirculation mode.

**Warning**
The exchange of fresh air is reduced in air recirculation mode. In operation without cooling the air humidity increases, so the windows may mist up from inside. The quality of the passenger compartment air deteriorates, which may cause the vehicle occupants to feel drowsy.

In warm and very humid ambient air conditions, the windscreen might mist up from outside, when cold air is directed to it. If windscreen mists up from outside, activate windscreen wiper and deactivate 🚫.

**Basic settings**
Some settings can be changed in the menu Settings in the Info-Display. Vehicle personalisation 🔄 134.

**Auxiliary heater**

**Air heater**
Quickheat is an electric auxiliary air heater which automatically warms up the passenger compartment more quickly.

Air vents

**Adjustable air vents**
At least one air vent must be open while the cooling is on.

To open the vent, turn the adjuster wheel towards the bigger symbol. Adjust the air amount at the vent outlet by turning the adjuster wheel.
Direct the flow of air by tilting and swivelling the slats.
To close the vent, turn the adjuster wheel towards the smaller symbol.

**Warning**
Do not attach any objects to the slats of the air vents. Risk of damage and injury in case of an accident.

### Fixed air vents
Additional air vents are located beneath the windscreen and door windows and in the foot wells.

### Maintenance
#### Air intake

The air intake in front of the windscreen in the engine compartment must be kept clear to allow air intake. Remove any leaves, dirt or snow.

#### Pollen filter

The pollen filter cleans dust, soot, pollen and spores from the air entering the vehicle through the air intake.

### Air conditioning regular operation

In order to ensure continuously efficient performance, cooling must be operated for a few minutes once a month, irrespective of the weather and time of year. Operation with cooling is not possible when the outside temperature is too low.

### Service
For optimal cooling performance, it is recommended to annually check the climate control system, starting three years after initial vehicle registration, including:
- Functionality and pressure test
- Heating functionality
- Leakage check
- Check of drive belts
- Cleaning of condenser and evaporator drainage
- Performance check
Driving hints

Control of the vehicle

Never coast with engine not running (except during Autostop)
Many systems will not function in this situation (e.g. brake servo unit, power steering). Driving in this manner is a danger to yourself and others. All systems function during an Autostop, but there will be a controlled reduction in power steering assist and vehicle speed is reduced.
Stop-start system 165.

Idle boost
If charging of the battery is required due to battery condition, the power output of the generator has to be increased. This will be achieved by an idle boost which may be audible.
On vehicles with Uplevel- or Uplevel-Combi-Display, a message appears in the Driver Information Centre.

Pedals
To ensure the pedal travel is uninhibited, there must be no mats in the area of the pedals.

Steering
If power steering assist is lost because the engine stops or due to a system malfunction, the vehicle can be steered but may require increased effort.
Control indicator 118.

Caution

Vehicles equipped with hydraulic power steering:
If the steering wheel is turned until it reaches the end of its travel, and is held in that position for more than 15 seconds, damage may occur to the power steering system and there may be loss of power steering assist.

Driving and operating

Driving hints ..................... 162
Starting and operating .......... 163
Engine exhaust .................. 168
Automatic transmission ........ 169
Manual transmission ............ 173
Brakes .............................. 173
Ride control systems .......... 176
Driver assistance systems .... 181
Fuel .................................. 210
Trailer hitch ....................... 217
Starting and operating

New vehicle running-in

Do not brake unnecessarily hard for the first few journeys.

During the first drive, smoke may occur because of wax and oil evaporating off the exhaust system. Park the vehicle in the open for a while after the first drive and avoid inhaling the fumes.

During the running-in period fuel and engine oil consumption may be higher and the cleaning process of the diesel particle filter may take place more often. Autostop may be inhibited to allow for charging the battery.

Diesel particle filter 168.

Ignition switch positions

0 = Ignition off
1 = Steering wheel lock released, ignition off
2 = Ignition on, for diesel engine: preheating
3 = Starting

Retained power off

The following electronic systems can work until the driver's door is opened or at the latest for 10 minutes after the ignition is switched off:

- Power windows
- Sunroof
- Power outlets

Power to the Infotainment system will continue to operate for 30 minutes or until the key is removed from the ignition switch, regardless of whether any door will be opened.

Starting the engine

Automatic transmission: operate brake and move the selector lever to P or N.
Do not operate the accelerator pedal.

Diesel engine: turn the key to position 2 for preheating until control indicator ! extinguishes.

Turn the key briefly to position 3 and release: an automatic procedure operates the starter with a short delay as long as the engine is running, see Automatic Starter Control.

Before restarting or to switch off the engine, turn the key back to position 0.

During an Autostop, the engine can be started by depressing the clutch pedal.

Starting the vehicle at low temperatures
The start of the engine without additional heaters is possible down to -25 °C for diesel engines and -30 °C for petrol engines. Required is an engine oil with the correct viscosity, the correct fuel, performed services and a sufficiently charged battery. With temperatures below -30 °C the automatic transmission need a warming phase of approx. 5 minutes. The selector lever must be in position P.

Automatic Starter Control
This function controls the engine starting procedure. The driver does not have to hold the key in position 3. Once applied, the system will go on starting automatically until the engine is running. Because of the checking procedure, the engine starts running after a short delay.

Possible reasons for a non-starting engine:
- Clutch pedal not operated (manual transmission)
- Brake pedal not operated or selector lever not in P or N (automatic transmission)
- Timeout occurred

Turbo engine warm-up
Upon start-up, engine available torque may be limited for a short time, especially when the engine temperature is cold. The limitation is to allow the lubrication system to fully protect the engine.

Overrun cut-off
The fuel supply is automatically cut off during overrun, i.e. when the vehicle is driven with a gear engaged but accelerator is released.
Stop-start system
The stop-start system helps to save fuel and to reduce the exhaust emissions. When conditions allow, it switches off the engine as soon as the vehicle is at a low speed or at a standstill, e.g. at a traffic light or in a traffic jam. It starts the engine automatically as soon as the clutch is depressed. A battery sensor ensures that an Autostop is only performed if the vehicle battery is sufficiently charged for a restart.

Activation
The stop-start system is available as soon as the engine is started, the vehicle starts-off and the conditions as stated below in this section are fulfilled.

Deactivation
Deactivate the stop-start system manually by pressing the eco button. Deactivation is indicated when the LED in the button extinguishes.

Autostop
If the vehicle is at a low speed or at a standstill, activate an Autostop as follows:
- Depress the clutch pedal
- set the lever in neutral
- release the clutch pedal
The engine will be switched off while the ignition stays on.

Caution
The steering assist can be reduced during an Autostop.
Conditions for an Autostop
The stop-start system checks if each of the following conditions is fulfilled:

- The stop-start system is not manually deactivated
- the bonnet is fully closed
- the driver's door is closed or the driver's seat belt is fastened
- the vehicle battery is sufficiently charged and in good condition
- the engine is warmed up
- the engine coolant temperature is not too high
- the engine exhaust temperature is not too high, e.g. after driving with high engine load
- the ambient temperature is above -5° C
- the climate control system allows an Autostop
- the brake vacuum is sufficient
- the self-cleaning function of the diesel particle filter is not active
- the vehicle was driven at least at walking speed since the last Autostop

Otherwise an Autostop will be inhibited.
Certain settings of the climate control system may inhibit an Autostop. See Climate control chapter for more details ◆ 156.
Immediately after motorway driving an Autostop may be inhibited.
New vehicle running-in ◆ 163.

Vehicle battery discharge protection
To ensure reliable engine restarts, several battery discharge protection features are implemented as part of the stop-start system.

Power saving measures
During an Autostop, several electric features, e.g. auxiliary electric heater or rear window heating are disabled or switched into a power saving mode. The fan speed of the climate control system is reduced to save power.

Restart of the engine by the driver
Depress the clutch pedal to restart the engine.
The engine start is indicated by the needle at the idle speed position in the tachometer.
If the selector lever is shifted out of neutral before depressing the clutch first, control indicator ◆ illuminates or is shown as a symbol in the Driver Information Centre.
Control indicator ◆ ◆ 116.

Restart of the engine by the stop-start system
The selector lever has to be in neutral to enable an automatic restart.
If one of the following conditions occurs during an Autostop, the engine will be restarted automatically by the stop-start system:

- The stop-start system is manually deactivated
- the bonnet is opened
- the driver's seat belt is unfastened and the driver's door is opened
- the engine temperature is too low
- the charging level of the vehicle battery is below a defined level
- the brake vacuum is not sufficient
- the vehicle is driven at least at walking speed
- the climate control system requests an engine start
- the air conditioning is manually switched on

If the bonnet is not fully closed, a warning message is displayed in the Driver Information Centre.

If an electric accessory, e.g. a portable CD player, is connected to the power outlet, a brief power drop during restart might be noticeable.

Parking
- Do not park the vehicle on an easily ignitable surface. The high temperature of the exhaust system could ignite the surface.
- Always apply parking brake. Apply manual parking brake without pressing release button. Apply as firmly as possible on downhill or uphill slopes. Depress the foot brake at the same time to reduce operating force.

Apply electric parking brake by pulling switch \( \textcircled{P} \) for approx. one second.
- Switch off the engine and ignition. Turn the steering wheel until the steering wheel lock engages.
- If the vehicle is on a level surface or uphill slope, engage first gear or set the selector lever to P before switching off the ignition. On an uphill slope, turn the front wheels away from the kerb.

If the vehicle is on a downhill slope, engage reverse gear or set the selector lever to P before switching off the ignition. Turn the front wheels towards the kerb.
- Lock the vehicle and activate the anti-theft alarm system.

Note
In the event of an accident with airbag deployment, the engine is turned off automatically if the vehicle comes to a standstill within a certain time.
Engine exhaust

**Danger**

Engine exhaust gases contain poisonous carbon monoxide, which is colourless and odourless and could be fatal if inhaled.

If exhaust gases enter the interior of the vehicle, open the windows. Have the cause of the fault rectified by a workshop.

Avoid driving with an open load compartment, otherwise exhaust gases could enter the vehicle.

Diesel particle filter

The diesel particle filter system filters harmful soot particles out of the exhaust gases. The system includes a self-cleaning function that runs automatically during driving without any notification. The filter is cleaned by periodically burning off the soot particles at high temperature. This process takes place automatically under set driving conditions and may take up to 25 minutes. Typically it needs between 7 and 12 minutes. Autostop is not available and fuel consumption may be higher during this period. The emission of smells and smoke during this process is normal.

Under certain driving conditions, e.g. short distances, the system cannot clean itself automatically.

If the cleaning of the filter is required and if previous driving conditions did not enable automatic cleaning, it will be indicated by control indicator \(\text{\#5} \) . Simultaneously Diesel partic. filter is full continue driving or warning code 55 appears in the Driver Information Centre.

\(\text{\#5} \) illuminates when diesel particle filter is full. Start cleaning process as soon as possible.

\(\text{\#5} \) flashes when diesel particle filter has reached the maximum filling level. Start cleaning process immediately to avoid damage to the engine.

Cleaning process

To activate cleaning process, continue driving, keep engine speed above 2000 revolutions per minute. Shift down if necessary. Diesel particle filter cleaning is then started.

If \(\text{\#5} \) illuminates additionally, cleaning is not possible, seek the assistance of a workshop.

**Caution**

If the cleaning process is interrupted, there is a risk of provoking severe engine damage.
Cleaning takes place quickest at high engine speeds and loads. The control indicator % extinguishes as soon as the self-cleaning operation is complete.

Catalytic converter
The catalytic converter reduces the amount of harmful substances in the exhaust gases.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Caution</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Fuel grades other than those listed on pages ◊ 210, ◊ 291 could damage the catalytic converter or electronic components. Unburnt petrol will overheat and damage the catalytic converter. Therefore avoid excessive use of the starter, running the fuel tank dry and starting the engine by pushing or towing.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

In the event of misfiring, uneven engine running, a reduction in engine performance or other unusual problems, have the cause of the fault rectified by a workshop as soon as possible. In an emergency, driving can be continued for a short period, keeping vehicle speed and engine speed low.

Automatic transmission
The automatic transmission permits automatic gearshifting (automatic mode) or manual gearshifting (manual mode).

Transmission display
The mode or selected gear is shown in the transmission display.
Selector lever

P = park position, wheels are locked, engage only when the vehicle is stationary and the parking brake is applied
R = reverse gear, engage only when the vehicle is stationary
N = neutral
D = automatic mode with all gears

The selector lever is locked in P and can only be moved when the ignition is on and the brake pedal is applied.

Without brake pedal applied, the control indicator ([]) illuminates.

If the selector lever is not in P when the ignition is switched off, the control indicators ([]) and P flash.

To engage P or R, press the release button.

The engine can only be started with the lever in position P or N. When position N is selected, press the brake pedal or apply the parking brake before starting.

Do not accelerate while engaging a gear. Never depress the accelerator pedal and brake pedal at the same time.

When a gear is engaged, the vehicle slowly begins to creep when the brake is released.

Engine braking
To utilise the engine braking effect, select a lower gear in good time when driving downhill, see manual mode.

Rocking the vehicle
Rocking the vehicle is only permissible if the vehicle is stuck in sand, mud or snow. Move the selector lever between D and R in a repeat pattern. Do not race the engine and avoid sudden acceleration.

Parking
Apply the parking brake and engage P.

The ignition key can only be removed when the selector lever is in position P.
Manual mode

Move selector lever out of position D towards the left and then forwards or backwards.

+ = Shift to a higher gear.

− = Shift to a lower gear.

If a higher gear is selected when vehicle speed is too low, or a lower gear when vehicle speed is too high, the shift is not executed. This can cause a message in the Driver-Info-Display.

In manual mode no automatic shifting to a higher gear takes place at high engine revolutions.

Electronic driving programmes

- Following a cold start, the operating temperature programme increases engine speed to quickly bring the catalytic converter to the required temperature.
- The automatic neutral shift function automatically shifts to idling when the vehicle is stopped with a forward gear engaged and the brake pedal is pressed.
- When SPORT mode is engaged, the vehicle shifts at higher engine speeds (unless cruise control is on). SPORT mode 179.
- Special programmes automatically adapt the shifting points when driving up inclines or down hills.
- When starting off in snowy or icy conditions or on other slippery surfaces, the electronic transmission control selects a higher gear automatically.

Kickdown

If the accelerator pedal is pressed down completely in automatic mode, the transmission shifts to a lower gear depending on engine speed.

Fault

In the event of a fault, \( \text{illuminates. Additionally a code number or a vehicle message is displayed in the Driver Information Centre. Vehicle messages 128.} \)

The transmission no longer shifts automatically. Continued travel is possible with manual shifting.
Driving and operating

Only the highest gear is available. Depending on the fault, 2nd gear may also be available in manual mode. Shift only when vehicle is at a standstill. Have the cause of the fault remedied by a workshop.

**Interruption of power supply**

In the event of an interruption of power supply, the selector lever cannot be moved out of the P position. The ignition key cannot be removed from the ignition switch. If the vehicle battery is discharged, start the vehicle using jump leads 276.

If the vehicle battery is not the cause of the fault, release the selector lever.

1. Apply the parking brake.
2. Release the selector lever trim from the centre console at the front, fold it upwards and rotate it to the left.
3. Insert a screwdriver into the opening as far as it will go and move the selector lever out of P or N. If P or N is engaged again, the selector lever will be locked in position again. Have the cause of the power supply interruption remedied by a workshop.
4. Mount the selector lever trim onto the centre console and refit.
Manual transmission

To engage reverse, with the vehicle stationary wait 3 seconds after depressing the clutch pedal and then press the release button on the selector lever and engage the gear. If the gear does not engage, set the lever to neutral, release the clutch pedal and depress again; then repeat gear selection.

Do not slip the clutch unnecessarily.
When operating, depress the clutch pedal completely. Do not use the pedal as a foot rest.

Brakes

The brake system comprises two independent brake circuits.
If a brake circuit fails, the vehicle can still be braked using the other brake circuit. However, braking effect is achieved only when the brake pedal is depressed firmly. Considerably more force is needed for this. The braking distance is extended. Seek the assistance of a workshop before continuing your journey.

When the engine is not running, the support of the brake servo unit disappears once the brake pedal has been depressed once or twice. Braking effect is not reduced, but braking requires significantly greater force. It is especially important to bear this in mind when being towed.

Control indicator R 116.

Antilock brake system

Antilock brake system (ABS) prevents the wheels from locking.
Driving and operating

ABS starts to regulate brake pressure as soon as a wheel shows a tendency to lock. The vehicle remains steerable, even during hard braking. ABS control is made apparent through a pulse in the brake pedal and the noise of the regulation process.

For optimum braking, keep the brake pedal fully depressed throughout the braking process, despite the fact that the pedal is pulsating. Do not reduce the pressure on the pedal.

After starting off the system performs a self-test which may be audible.

Control indicator (၂) ၁၁၇.

Adaptive brake light
During full braking, all three brake lights flash for the duration of ABS control.

Fault

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Warning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>If there is a fault in the ABS, the wheels may be liable to lock due to braking that is heavier than normal. The advantages of ABS are no longer available. During hard braking, the vehicle can no longer be steered and may swerve.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Have the cause of the fault remedied by a workshop.

Parking brake

Manual parking brake

Always apply parking brake firmly without operating the release button, and apply as firmly as possible on a downhill or uphill slope.

To release the parking brake, pull the lever up slightly, press the release button and fully lower the lever.

To reduce the operating forces of the parking brake, depress the foot brake at the same time.

Control indicator (၀) ၁၁၆.
Electric parking brake

Applying when vehicle is stationary
Pull switch for approx. one second, the electric parking brake operates automatically with an adequate force. For maximum force, e.g. parking with trailer or on inclines, pull switch twice.

The electric parking brake is applied when control indicator illuminates 117.

The electric parking brake can always be activated, even if the ignition is off.

Do not operate electric parking brake system too often without engine running because this will discharge the vehicle battery.

Before leaving the vehicle, check the electric parking brake status. Control indicator 117.

Releasing
Switch on ignition. Keep brake pedal depressed and then push switch.

Drive away function
Depressing clutch pedal (manual transmission) or engaging drive gear (automatic transmission) and then depressing the accelerator pedal releases the electric parking brake automatically. This is not possible when the switch is pulled at the same time.

This function also helps driving away on inclines.

Aggressive drive away may reduce life time of wear parts.

Dynamic braking when vehicle is moving
When the vehicle is moving and the switch is kept pulled, the electric parking brake system will decelerate the vehicle, but will not apply statically.

As soon as the switch is released, dynamic braking will be stopped.

Fault
Failure mode of electric parking brake is indicated by control indicator and by a code number or a vehicle message which is displayed in the Driver Information Centre. Vehicle messages 128.

Apply electric parking brake: pull and hold the switch for more than 5 seconds. If control indicator illuminates, electric parking brake is applied.

Release electric parking brake: push and hold the switch for more than 2 seconds. If control indicator extinguishes, electric parking brake is released.
Control indicator ¤ flashes: electric parking brake is not fully applied or released. When continuously flashing, release electric parking brake and retry applying.

Brake assist
If the brake pedal is depressed quickly and forcefully, maximum brake force is automatically applied (full braking).
Maintain steady pressure on the brake pedal for as long as full braking is required. Maximum brake force is automatically reduced when the brake pedal is released.

Hill start assist
The system helps prevent unintended movement when driving away on inclines.
When releasing the foot brake after stopping on an incline, the brakes remain on for a further two seconds. The brakes release automatically as soon as the vehicle begins to accelerate.

The hill start assist is not active during an Autostop.

Ride control systems
Traction Control system
The Traction Control system (TC) is a component of the Electronic Stability Control (ESC) ◊ 177.
TC improves driving stability when necessary, regardless of the type of road surface or tyre grip, by preventing the drive wheels from spinning.
As soon as the drive wheels starts to spin, engine output is reduced and the wheel spinning the most is braked individually. This considerably improves the driving stability of the vehicle on slippery road surfaces.
TC is operational after each engine start as soon as the control indicator ◊ extinguishes.
When TC operates ◊ flashes.
Driving and operating

⚠️ Warning

Do not let this special safety feature tempt you into taking risks when driving.
Adapt speed to the road conditions.

Control indicator ⚠️ 118.

**Deactivation**

TC can be switched off when spinning of drive wheels is required:

press button ⚠️ briefly to deactivate TC, ⚠️ illuminates. Deactivation is displayed as status message in the Driver Information Centre.
TC is reactivated by pressing the ⚠️ button again.
TC is also reactivated the next time the ignition is switched on.

**Electronic Stability Control**

Electronic Stability Control (ESC) improves driving stability when necessary, regardless of the type of road surface or tyre grip. It also prevents the drive wheels from spinning. ESC operates in combination with the Traction Control system (TC) ⚠️ 176.

As soon as the vehicle starts to swerve (understeer/oversteer), engine output is reduced and the wheels are braked individually. This considerably improves the driving stability of the vehicle on slippery road surfaces.

ESC is operational after each engine start as soon as the control indicator ⚠️ extinguishes.
When ESC operates ⚠️ flashes.

⚠️ Warning

Do not let this special safety feature tempt you into taking risks when driving.
Adapt speed to the road conditions.

Control indicator ⚠️ 118.

**Deactivation**
For a more sporty behaviour ESC and TC can be deactivated separately:

- press button \( b \) briefly: only Traction control system is inactive, ESC remains active, \( k \) illuminates
- hold button \( b \) pressed for min. 5 seconds: TC and ESC are deactivated, \( k \) and \( n \) illuminate.

Additionally the selected mode is displayed as status message in the Driver Information Centre.

If the vehicle comes into threshold with deactivated ESP, the system will reactivate ESP for the time duration of the threshold, when the brake pedal is depressed once.

ESC is reactivated by pressing the \( b \) button again. If the TC system was previously disabled, both TC and ESC are reactivated.

ESC is also reactivated the next time the ignition is switched on.

Deactivation, OPC version

For very high-performance driving ESC and TC can be deactivated separately. The following modes are selectable:

- press button \( b \) briefly: only Traction control system is inactive, ESC remains active, \( k \) illuminates
- press button \( b \) twice briefly within 2 seconds: TC is inactive, ESC is operable without engine power reduction, \( k \) and \( n \) illuminate
- hold button \( b \) pressed for min. 5 seconds: TC and ESC are completely inactive, \( k \) and \( n \) illuminate.

Additionally the selected mode is displayed as status message in the Driver Information Centre.

On OPC version TC and ESC remain deactivated even if the vehicle comes into threshold with unstable driveability.

ESC is reactivated by pressing the \( b \) button again. If the TC system was previously disabled, both TC and ESC are reactivated.

ESC is also reactivated the next time the ignition is switched on.
Interactive driving system

**Flex Ride**
Flex Ride driving system allows the driver to select between three driving modes:

- **SPORT mode**: press button SPORT, LED illuminates.
- **TOUR mode**: press button TOUR, LED illuminates.
- **NORMAL mode**: both buttons SPORT and TOUR are not pressed, no LED illuminates.

Deactivate SPORT mode and TOUR mode by pressing corresponding button once more.

In each driving mode Flex Ride networks the following electronic systems:

- Continuous Damping Control.
- Accelerator Pedal Control.
- Steering Control.
- Electronic Stability Control (ESC).
- Antilock brake system (ABS) with cornering brake control (CBC).
- Automatic transmission.

**SPORT mode**
The settings of the systems are adapted to a sportier driving style:

- Damping of shock absorbers reacts more stiffly to provide better contact with the road surface.
- The engine reacts more quickly to the accelerator pedal.
- Steering support is reduced.
- Shift points of automatic transmission occur later.
- With SPORT mode activated, the illumination of main instruments changes from white to red.

**TOUR mode**
The settings of the systems are adapted to a comfort driving style:

- Damping of shock absorbers reacts more softly.
- Accelerator pedal reacts with standard settings.
- Steering support is in standard mode.
- Shift points of automatic transmission occur in a comfort mode.
- Illumination of main instruments is white.

**NORMAL mode**
All settings of the systems are adapted to standard values.

**Drive mode control**
Within each manual selected driving mode SPORT, TOUR or NORMAL, the Drive Mode Control (DMC) detects and analyses continuously the real driving characteristic, responses by the driver, and the active dynamic state of the vehicle. If necessary, the control unit of DMC...
Driving and operating

automatically changes the settings within the selected driving mode or, when recognising greater variations, the driving mode is changed for the length of variation.

If, for example, NORMAL mode is selected and DMC detects a sporty driving behaviour, DMC changes several settings of the Normal mode into sporty settings. The DMC changes to SPORT mode in case of very sporty driving behaviour.

If, for example, TOUR mode is selected and whilst driving on a winding road a sudden hard brake is necessary, DMC will detect the dynamic vehicle condition and changes the settings for suspension to SPORT mode to increase vehicle stability.

When the driving characteristic or the dynamic vehicle state returns to former state, DMC will change the settings to the preselected driving mode.

Personalised settings in the Sport mode
The driver can select the functions of the SPORT mode when SPORT button is pressed. These settings can be changed in the menu Settings in the Info-Display. Vehicle personalisation 134.

Flex Ride - OPC Version
The OPC Version of Flex Ride system works in the same way as the standard Flex Ride system with the difference that the modes have a more sporty characteristic.

OPC Flex Ride driving system allows the driver to select between three driving modes:
- OPC mode: press button OPC, LED illuminates.
- SPORT mode: press button SPORT, LED illuminates.
- NORMAL mode: neither button SPORT nor OPC is pressed, no LED illuminates.

Deactivate SPORT mode and OPC mode by pressing corresponding button once more.

In each driving mode OPC Flex Ride networks the following electronic systems:
- Continuous Damping Control.
- Accelerator Pedal Control.
- Steering Control.
- Electronic Stability Control (ESC).
- Antilock brake system (ABS) with cornering brake control (CBC).
NORMAL mode
In NORMAL mode, when neither SPORT nor OPC button is pressed, all settings of the systems are adapted to standard values.

SPORT mode
The settings of the systems are adapted to a sportier driving style.

OPC mode
The drive dynamic characteristics are adapted to high performance settings.
In this mode the illumination of main instruments is switched to red.

Personalised settings in the OPC mode
The driver can select the functions of the OPC mode when OPC button is pressed. These settings can be changed in the menu Settings in the Info-Display. Vehicle personalisation 134.

Driver assistance systems

⚠️ Warning
Driver assistance systems are developed to support the driver and not to replace the driver’s attention.
The driver accepts full responsibility when driving the vehicle.
When using driver assistance systems, always take care regarding the current traffic situation.

Cruise control
The Cruise control can store and maintain speeds of approx. 30 to 200 km/h. Deviations from the stored speeds may occur when driving uphill or downhill.

For safety reasons the cruise control cannot be activated until the foot brake has been operated once. Activating in first gear is not possible.

Do not use the cruise control if it is not advisable to maintain a constant speed.
With automatic transmission, only activate cruise control in automatic mode.
Control indicator 121.

Switching on
Press button , control indicator in instrument cluster illuminates white.
Driving and operating

Activation
Accelerate to the desired speed and turn thumb wheel to SET/-, the current speed is stored and maintained. Control indicator \( \text{m} \) in instrument cluster illuminates green. Accelerator pedal can be released. Vehicle speed can be increased by depressing the accelerator pedal. When the accelerator pedal is released, the previously stored speed is resumed.

Cruise control remains activated while gearshifting.

Increase speed
With cruise control active, hold thumb wheel turned to RES/+ or briefly turn to RES/+ repeatedly: speed increases continuously or in small increments.

Alternatively accelerate to the desired speed and store by turning to SET/-.

Reduce speed
With cruise control active, hold thumb wheel turned to SET/- or briefly turn to SET/- repeatedly: speed decreases continuously or in small increments.

Deactivation
Press button \( \text{m} \), control indicator \( \text{m} \) in instrument cluster illuminates white. Cruise control is deactivated. Last used set speed is stored in memory for later speed resume.

Automatic deactivation:
- vehicle speed below approx. 30 km/h,
- vehicle speed above approx. 200 km/h,
- the brake pedal is depressed,
- the clutch pedal is depressed for a few seconds,
- selector lever in N,
- engine speed in a very low range,
- the Traction Control system or Electronic Stability Control is operating.

Resume stored speed
Turn thumb wheel to RES/+ at a speed above 30 km/h. The stored speed will be obtained.

Switching off
Press button \( \text{m} \), control indicator \( \text{m} \) in instrument cluster extinguishes. The stored speed is deleted.

Pressing button \( \text{L} \) for activating speed limiter or switching off the ignition also switches off cruise control and deletes the stored speed.
Speed limiter
The speed limiter prevents the vehicle exceeding a preset maximum speed.
The maximum speed can be set at a speed above 25 km/h.
The driver can only accelerate up to the preset speed. Deviations from the limited speed may occur when driving downhill.
The preset speed limit is displayed in the top line of the Driver Information Centre when the system is active.

Activation

Press button 🗿. If cruise control or adaptive cruise control has been activated before, it is switched off when speed limiter is activated and the control indicator 🕵️灭 extinguishes.

Set speed limit

With speed limiter active, hold thumb wheel turned to RES/+ or briefly turn to RES/+ repeatedly until the desired maximum speed is displayed in the Driver Information Centre. Alternatively accelerate to the desired speed and briefly turn thumb wheel to SET/-: the current speed is stored as maximum speed. Speed limit is displayed in the Driver Information Centre.

Change speed limit
With speed limiter active, turn thumb wheel to RES/+ to increase or SET/- to decrease the desired maximum speed.

Exceeding the speed limit
In the event of an emergency it is possible to exceed the speed limit by depressing the accelerator pedal firmly beyond the point of resistance.
The limited speed will flash in the Driver Information Centre and, depending on the vehicle, additionally a chime sounds during this period. Release the accelerator pedal and the speed limiter function is reactivated once a speed lower than the limit speed is obtained.

Deactivation
Press button ⬇️: speed limiter is deactivated and the vehicle can be driven without speed limit. The limited speed is stored and a corresponding message appears in the Driver Information Centre.

Resume limit speed
Turn thumb wheel to RES/+ . The stored speed limit will be obtained.

Switching off
Press button ⬇️, the speed limit indication in the Driver Information Centre extinguishes. The stored speed is deleted.

By pressing button ⬇️ to activate cruise control or adaptive cruise control or by switching off the ignition, speed limiter is also deactivated and the stored speed is deleted.

Adaptive cruise control
Adaptive cruise control is an enhancement to traditional cruise control with the additional feature of maintaining a certain distance behind the vehicle ahead.

Adaptive cruise control automatically decelerates the vehicle when approaching a slower moving vehicle. It then adjusts the vehicle speed to follow the vehicle ahead at the selected following distance. The vehicle speed increases or decreases to follow the vehicle in front, but will not exceed the set speed. It may apply limited braking with activated brake lights.

The adaptive cruise control can store and maintain speeds over approx. 50 km/h and brakes automatically to follow a slower vehicle driving ahead to a minimum speed of 30 km/h.

Adaptive cruise control uses a radar sensor to detect the vehicles ahead. If no vehicle is detected in the driving path, the adaptive cruise control will behave like a traditional cruise control.

For safety reasons, the system cannot be activated before the brake pedal has been depressed once since switching on ignition. Activation in first gear is not possible.

Adaptive cruise control is mainly advised to be used on long straight roads, e.g. highways or country roads with steady traffic. Do not use the system if it is not advisable to maintain a constant speed.

Control indicator ⬇️ 121, ⬇️ 121.
Driving and operating

⚠️ Warning

The complete driver attention is always required while driving with adaptive cruise control. The driver stays fully in control of the vehicle because the brake pedal, the accelerator pedal and the cancel switch have priority over any adaptive cruise control operation.

Switching on

Press button 🆙 to switch on adaptive cruise control. The control indicator ✍️ illuminates white.

Activation by setting the speed

Adaptive cruise control can be activated between 50 km/h and 180 km/h.

Accelerate to the desired speed and turn thumb wheel to SET/−, the current speed is stored and maintained. Control indicator ✍️ illuminates green.

The adaptive cruise control symbol, the following distance setting and set speed are indicated in the top line of the Driver Information Centre.

The accelerator pedal can be released. Adaptive cruise control remains activated while gearshifting.

Overriding set speed

It is always possible to drive faster than the selected set speed by depressing the accelerator pedal. When the accelerator pedal is released, the vehicle returns to the desired distance if a slower vehicle is ahead. Otherwise it returns to the stored speed.

Once the system is activated, adaptive cruise control decelerates or brakes if it detects a vehicle ahead, which is slower or closer than the desired following distance.

⚠️ Warning

Accelerating by the driver deactivates automatic braking by the system. This is indicated as a pop-up warning in the Driver Information Centre.
Increase speed
With adaptive cruise control active, hold thumb wheel turned to **RES/+**: speed increases continuously in large increments, or activate repeatedly **RES/+**: speed increases in small increments.
If the vehicle is driven with adaptive cruise control active much faster than the desired speed, e.g. after depressing the accelerator pedal, then the current speed can be stored and maintained by turning the thumb wheel to **SET/-**.

Reduce speed
With adaptive cruise control active, hold thumb wheel turned to **SET/-**: speed decreases continuously in large increments, or activate repeatedly **SET/-**: speed decreases in small increments.
If the vehicle is driven with adaptive cruise control active much slower than the desired speed, e.g. because of a slower vehicle ahead, then the current speed can be stored and maintained by turning the thumb wheel to **SET/-**.

Resume stored speed
If the system is switched on but inactive, then turn thumb wheel to **RES/+** at a speed above 50 km/h to resume the stored speed.

Setting the following distance
When adaptive cruise control detects a slower moving vehicle in the driving path, it will adjust the vehicle speed to maintain the following distance selected by the driver.
The following distance can be set to near, medium or far.

Press button ⏳; the current setting is shown on the Driver Information Centre. Press button ⏳ again to change the following distance. The setting is also displayed in the top line of the Driver Information Centre.
The selected following distance is indicated by filled distance bars in the adaptive cruise control page. Note that the following distance setting is shared with the sensitivity setting of forward collision alert. Example: If setting 3 (far) is selected, then the driver is warned sooner before a possible collision, also if adaptive cruise control is inactive or switched off.

### Warning

The driver accepts full responsibility for the appropriate following distance based on traffic, weather and visibility conditions. Following distance must be adjusted or the system switched off when required by the prevailing conditions.

### Detecting the vehicle ahead

The green illuminated vehicle ahead control indicator 🚗 is displayed in the speedometer when the system detects a vehicle in the driving path. If this symbol does not display, or displays briefly, adaptive cruise control will not respond to vehicles ahead.

### Deactivation

Adaptive cruise control is deactivated by the driver when:
- button 🔴 is pressed,
- brake pedal is applied,
- clutch pedal is depressed for more than four seconds,
- gear selector lever of automatic transmission is moved to N.

The system is also automatically deactivated when:
- vehicle speed slows down below 45 km/h or accelerates above 190 km/h,
- Traction Control system is operating for more than 20 seconds,
Driving and operating

- Electronic Stability Control is operating,
- there is no traffic and nothing detected on the road sides for several minutes. In this case there are no radar echoes and the sensor may report that it is blocked,
- collision imminent braking is applying the brakes,
- radar sensor is blocked by an ice or water film,
- fault is detected in the radar, engine or brake system.

When adaptive cruise control is deactivated automatically, the control indicator **illuminates white and a warning symbol is displayed as a pop-up in the Driver Information Centre.**

The stored speed is maintained.

### Warning

When adaptive cruise control is deactivated, the driver must take over full brake and engine control.

### Switching off

Press button `C` to switch off adaptive cruise control. The control indicator **extinguishes. The stored speed is deleted.**

Switching off the ignition also switches off adaptive cruise control and deletes the stored speed.

### Driver's attention

- Use adaptive cruise control carefully on bends or mountain roads, as it can lose the vehicle ahead and need time to detect it again.
- Do not use the system on slippery roads as it can create rapid changes in tyre traction (wheel spinning), so that you could lose control.
- Do not use adaptive cruise control during rain, snow or heavy dirt, as the radar sensor can be covered by a water film, dust, ice or snow. This reduces or suppresses completely the visibility. In case of sensor blockage, clean the sensor cover.

### System limits

- The system's automatic brake force does not permit hard braking and the braking level may not be sufficient to avoid a collision.
- After a sudden lane change, the system needs a certain time to detect the next preceding vehicle.
So if a new vehicle is detected, the system may accelerate instead of braking.

- Adaptive cruise control does ignore the oncoming traffic.
- Adaptive cruise control does not brake for stopped vehicles, pedestrians or animals.

**Bends**

The adaptive cruise control calculates a predicted path based on the centrifugal force. This predicted path considers the current bend characteristic, but cannot consider a future bend change. The system may lose the current vehicle ahead or consider a vehicle which is not in the actual lane. This can happen when entering or exiting a bend or if the bend gets stronger or weaker. If it no longer detects any vehicle ahead, then control indicator 🚄 will extinguish.

If the centrifugal force is too high in a bend, the system slows down the vehicle slightly. This braking level is not designed to avoid spinning off the bend. The driver is responsible for reducing the selected speed before entering a bend and in general to adapt the speed to the road type and to existing speed limits.

**Motorways**

On motorways, adapt the set speed to the situation and the weather. Always consider that adaptive cruise control has a limited visibility range, a limited braking level and a certain reaction time to verify if a vehicle is on the driving path or not. Adaptive cruise control may not be able to brake the vehicle in time to avoid a collision with a much slower vehicle or after a lane change. This is particularly true if driving fast or if the visibility is reduced due to weather conditions.

While entering or exiting a motorway, adaptive cruise control may lose the vehicle ahead and accelerate up to the set speed. For this reason, decrease the set speed before the exit or before the entry.

**Vehicle path changes**

If another vehicle enters your driving path, adaptive cruise control will first consider the vehicle when it is completely in your path. Be ready to take action and depress the brake pedal, if you need to brake more quickly.
**Hill and trailer considerations**

System performance on hills and when towing a trailer depends on your vehicle speed, vehicle load, traffic conditions and the road gradient. It may not detect a vehicle in your path while driving on hills. On steep hills, you may have to use the accelerator pedal to maintain your vehicle speed. When going downhill, especially when towing a trailer, you may have to brake to maintain or reduce your speed.

Note that applying the brake deactivates the system. It is not recommended to use adaptive cruise control on steep hills especially when towing a trailer.

**Radar unit**

The radar unit is mounted behind the radiator grille below the brand emblem.

**Warning**

The radar unit was aligned carefully during manufacture. Therefore, after a frontal accident, do not use the system. The front bumper may appear to be intact, however the sensor behind can be out of position and react incorrectly. After an accident, consult a workshop to verify and correct the adaptive cruise control sensor position.

**Settings**

Settings can be changed in the **Auto collision preparation** menu in the vehicle personalisation, 134.

**Fault**

If the adaptive cruise control does not work due to temporary conditions (e.g. blockage by ice) or if there is a permanent system error, then a message is displayed in the Driver Information Centre.
Vehicle messages ◊ 128.

**Forward collision alert**

The forward collision alert can help to avoid or reduce the harm caused by front-end crashes.

A vehicle ahead is indicated by a control indicator 🚗.

If a vehicle directly ahead is approached too quickly, a warning chime and alert in the Driver Information Centre is provided.

A precondition is that forward collision alert is activated in the vehicle personalisation menu ◊ 134 or that it is not deactivated by the button ➕ (depending on the system, see following).

Depending on the vehicle’s equipment, there are two variants of the forward collision alert available:

- **Forward collision alert based on radar system**

  The system uses the radar sensor behind the radiator grille to detect a vehicle directly ahead, in your path, within a maximum distance of 150 metres.

  **Activation**

  Forward collision alert operates automatically above walking speed, provided that **Auto collision preparation** setting is not deactivated in the vehicle personalisation menu ◊ 134.

- **Forward collision alert based on front camera system**

  on vehicles with traditional cruise control or none ◊ 181.

  **Forward collision alert based on radar system**

  The system uses the radar sensor behind the radiator grille to detect a vehicle directly ahead, in your path, within a maximum distance of 150 metres.

  **Activation**

  Forward collision alert operates automatically above walking speed, provided that **Auto collision preparation** setting is not deactivated in the vehicle personalisation menu ◊ 134.

  **Selecting the alert sensitivity**

  The alert sensitivity can be set to near, medium or far.
Driving and operating

Press button $\mathcal{E}$; the current setting is shown on the Driver Information Centre. Press button $\mathcal{E}$ again to change the alert sensitivity. The setting is also displayed in the top line of the Driver Information Centre.

Note that the alert timing sensitivity setting is shared with the following distance setting of the adaptive cruise control. So changing the alert timing sensitivity changes the adaptive cruise control following distance setting.

Alerting the driver

A green illuminated vehicle ahead control indicator $\mathcal{H}$ lights up in the instrument cluster when the system has detected a vehicle in the driving path. When the distance to a preceding moving vehicle gets too small or when approaching another vehicle too rapidly and a collision is imminent, the collision alert symbol pops up in the Driver Information Centre. Simultaneously a warning chime sounds.

Depress the brake pedal, if it is required by the situation.
Settings
Settings can be changed in the Auto collision preparation menu in the vehicle personalisation 134.

Forward collision alert based on front camera system
Forward collision alert uses the front camera system in the windscreen to detect a vehicle directly ahead, in your path, within a distance of approx. 60 metres.

Activation
Forward collision alert operates automatically above 40 km/h, if it is not deactivated by button V, see below.

Selecting the alert sensitivity
The alert sensitivity can be set to near, medium or far.

Alerting the driver
A green illuminated vehicle ahead control indicator 🚗 lights up in the instrument cluster when the system has detected a vehicle in the driving path.

Press button V; the current setting is shown on the Driver Information Centre. Press button V again to change the alert sensitivity.

When the distance to a preceding moving vehicle gets too small or when approaching another vehicle too rapidly and a collision is imminent, the collision alert symbol pops up in the Driver Information Centre. Simultaneously a warning chime sounds. Depress the brake pedal, if it is required by the situation.
Driving and operating

Deactivation
The system can be deactivated. Press button \( \Rightarrow \) repeatedly until the following message appears in the Driver Information Centre.

General information for both variants of forward collision alert

⚠️ Warning
Forward collision alert is just a warning system and does not apply the brakes. When approaching a vehicle ahead too rapidly, it may not provide you enough time to avoid a collision.

The driver accepts full responsibility for the appropriate following distance based on traffic, weather, and visibility conditions.

The complete attention of the driver is always required while driving. The driver must always be ready to take action and apply the brakes.

System limitations
The system is designed to warn only for vehicles, but may react also to other metallic objects.

In the following cases, forward collision alert may not detect a vehicle ahead or sensor performance is limited:
- on winding roads,
- when weather limits visibility, e.g. fog, rain, or snow,
- when the sensor is blocked by snow, ice, slush, mud, dirt, or windscreen damage.

Following distance indication
The following distance indication displays the distance to a preceding moving vehicle. The system uses, depending on the vehicle equipment, either the radar behind the radiator grille or the front camera in the windscreen to detect the distance of a vehicle directly ahead in your path. It is active at speeds above 40 km/h.

When a preceding vehicle is detected ahead, the distance is indicated in seconds, displayed on a page in the Driver Information Centre \( \Rightarrow \) 121. Press the MENU button on the turn signal lever to select Vehicle Information Menu \( \Rightarrow \) and turn the adjuster wheel to choose following distance indication page.
The minimum indicated distance is 0.5 s.
If there is no vehicle ahead or the vehicle ahead is out of range, two dashes will be displayed: -.- s.

**Active Emergency Braking**
Active emergency braking can help to reduce the damage from crashes with vehicles and obstacles directly ahead, when a collision can no longer be avoided either by manual braking or by steering. Before the active emergency braking applies, the driver is warned by the forward collision alert 191.

The feature uses various inputs (e.g. radar sensor, brake pressure, vehicle speed) to calculate the probability of a frontal collision.

Active emergency braking operates automatically above walking speed, provided that **Auto collision preparation** setting is not deactivated in the vehicle personalisation menu 134.

The system includes:
- **Brake preparation system**
- **Emergency automatic braking**
- **Forward looking brake assist**

**Warning**
This system is not intended to replace the driver responsibility of driving the vehicle and looking ahead. Its function is limited to supplemental use only. The driver shall continue to apply the brake pedal as the driving situation dictates.

**Brake preparation system**
When approaching a vehicle ahead so quickly that a collision is likely, the brake preparation system slightly pressurises the brakes. This reduces the response time, when a manual or automatic braking is requested.

The brake system is prepared so that braking can occur more rapidly.

**Emergency automatic braking**
After the brake preparation and just before the imminent collision, this function automatically applies limited braking to reduce the impact speed of the collision.

**Forward looking brake assist**
In addition to brake preparation system and emergency automatic braking, the forward looking brake assist function makes the brake assist more sensitive. In this way, depressing the brake pedal slightly
results immediately in a strong braking. This function helps the driver brake quicker and stronger before the imminent collision.

**Warning**

Active emergency braking is not designed to apply strong autonomous braking or to avoid automatically a collision. It is designed to reduce the vehicle speed before collision. It may not react on stopped vehicles, pedestrians or animals. After a sudden lane change, the system needs a certain time to detect the next preceding vehicle.

The complete attention of the driver is always required while driving. The driver shall always be ready to take action and apply the brakes and steer to avoid collisions. The system is designed to work with all occupants wearing their seat belts.

**System limitations**

The active emergency braking has limited or no function during rain, snow or heavy dirt, as the radar sensor can be covered by a water film, dust, ice or snow. In case of sensor blockage, clean the sensor cover.

In some seldom cases the active emergency braking system may provide a short automatic braking in situations that seem to be unnecessary, for instance due to traffic signs in a curve or due to vehicles in another lane. This is acceptable operation, the vehicle does not need service. Firmly apply the accelerator pedal to override the automatic braking.

**Settings**

Settings can be changed in the Auto collision preparation menu in the vehicle personalisation, 134.

**Fault**

In the event of a system service requirement, a message is displayed in the Driver Information Centre.

Vehicle messages 128.

If the system does not work as it should do, vehicle messages are displayed in the Driver Information Centre.
Driving and operating

Parking assist

The parking assist makes parking easier by measuring the distance between the vehicle and obstacles, and giving acoustic signals. It is the driver, however, who bears full responsibility for the parking manoeuvre.

The system consists of four ultrasonic parking sensors in the rear bumper. If the vehicle is equipped with a front parking assist, the system consists of four additional ultrasonic parking sensors in the front bumper.

The system uses two different frequencies for the front and rear sensors, respectively, each with a different sound.

Control indicator P ▲ 118.

Button P ▲ or ▲

Parking assist will be activated and deactivated by pressing the parking assist button P ▲. If the vehicle is additionally equipped with advanced parking assist ▲ 200 parking assist is equipped with button ▲. In this case both systems will be operated by button ▲.

For activating or deactivating parking assist push button P ▲ or ▲ once briefly. For activating or deactivating advanced parking assist push button P ▲ or ▲ for approx. one second.

If one system is active, it can be switched between both systems by pushing the button shorter or longer.

Activation

When reverse gear is engaged, the system is activated automatically.
The front parking assist can also be activated at a low speed by pressing the parking assist button P or D briefly.

An illuminated LED in the parking assist button indicates that the system is ready to operate.

**Indication**

The system warns the driver with acoustic signals against handicaps in front of or behind the vehicle. Depending on which of the sensors are closer to an obstacle, you will hear a buzzing sound of the respective sensors. The interval between the sounds becomes shorter as the vehicle gets closer to the obstacle. When the distance is less than 30 cm, the buzzing is continuous.

Additionally, the distance to obstacles can be shown in the Driver Information Centre 121.

On version with Up level-Display, the distance to a front obstacle is indicated by changing segments.

On version with Up level-Combi-Display, the distance to a front and rear obstacle is indicated by changing distance lines around the vehicle.

The distance indication in the display can be inhibited by vehicle messages with a higher priority. Once the distance indication was overwritten by a vehicle message, distance is no more indicated until parking assist is activated again.

**Deactivation**

Deactivate the system by pressing the parking assist button P or D briefly.

The LED in the button extinguishes and Park Assist Off will be displayed in the Driver Information Centre.

The system is deactivated automatically when exceeding a certain speed.

If the P or D button is pressed once within an ignition cycle, the front parking assist is always reactivated when the vehicle speed goes below a certain value.
Fault
In the event of a fault in the system, \( P \) \( \Delta \) illuminates or a message is displayed in the Driver Information Centre.

If the system does not work due to temporary conditions like snow covered sensors, \( P \) \( \Delta \) illuminates or a message is displayed in the Driver Information Centre.

Vehicle messages \( \Diamond \) 128.

\[ \Delta \text{Warning} \]
Under certain circumstances, various reflective surfaces on objects or clothing as well as external noise sources may cause the system to fail to detect obstacles.

Special attention has to be paid to low obstacles which can damage the lower part of the bumper.

Caution
Performance of the sensor can be reduced when sensors are covered, e.g. by ice or snow.
Performance of the parking assist system can be reduced due to heavy loading.
Special conditions apply if there are taller vehicles involved (e.g. off-road vehicles, mini vans, vans). Object identification in the upper part of these vehicles cannot be guaranteed.
Objects with a very small reflection cross section, like objects of narrow size or soft materials, may not be detected by the system.
Parking assist will not detect objects out of the detection range.

Note
The parking assist system automatically detects factory-fitted towing equipment. It is deactivated when the connector is plugged in.

The sensor may detect a non-existing object (echo disturbance) caused by external acoustical or mechanic disturbances.

Note
If engaging a forward gear and exceeding a certain speed, the rear parking assist will be deactivated when the rear carrier system is extended.

If engaging reverse at first, the parking assist will detect the rear carrier system and provide a buzzing sound. Press \( P \) \( \Delta \) or \( \mathcal{F} \) \( \Delta \) briefly to deactivate the parking assist.
Advanced parking assist

The advanced parking assist system manoeuvres the driver into a parking slot by giving instructions on the Driver Information Centre and acoustic signals. It is the driver, however, who bears full responsibility for accepting the parking slot suggested by the system and the parking manoeuvre.

The system uses the sensors of the parking assist system in combination with two additional sensors on both sides of the front bumper and the rear bumper.

Button

Advanced parking assist and parking assist 197 both use the same button to operate the systems. For activating or deactivating parking assist push button once briefly. For activating or deactivating advanced parking assist push button for approx. one second.

If one system is active, it can be switched between both systems by pushing the button shorter or longer.

Activation

When looking for a parking slot, the system has to be activated by pushing the button for approx. one second.

The system can only be activated at a speed up to 30 km/h and the system searches for a parking slot at a speed up to 30 km/h.

The maximum allowed parallel distance between the vehicle and a row of parking cars is 1.8 metres.

Note

Before using the advanced parking assist the first time, the vehicle has to be driven at least for 40 km to calibrate the system automatically.
### Functionality

When the vehicle passes a row of cars and the system is activated, the advanced parking assist system begins looking for a suitable parking slot. When a suitable slot is detected, a visual feedback on the Driver Information Centre and an acoustic signal are given.

The parking slot suggestion of the system is accepted when the vehicle is stopped by the driver within 10 metres after the Stop message is given. The system calculates the optimal route into the parking slot. Then it manoeuvres the driver into the slot by giving detailed instructions.

The instructions show:
- a hint when driving faster than 30 km/h,
- the demand to stop the vehicle, when a parking slot is detected,
- the direction of driving during the parking manoeuvre,
- the steering wheel position during parking,
- for some of the instructions a progress bar is shown.

A successful parking manoeuvre is indicated by the End position symbol.
Driving and operating

If the driver does not stop the vehicle within 10 metres after a parking slot is proposed, the system starts to search for another suitable parking slot.

Changing the parking side
The system is configured to detect parking slots on the passenger side. To detect parking slots on the driver side, switch turn indicator to the driver side.

Display priorities
After activating the advanced parking assist, a message appears on the Driver Information Centre. Indication of messages with higher priority like vehicle messages ◊ 128 will be displayed. After approving the message by pressing the SET/CLR button, parking assist messages appear again and parking can be continued.

Deactivation
The system is deactivated by:
- pushing button ◊ for approx. one second
- parking manoeuvre successfully ended
- driving faster than 30 km/h
- switching off the ignition

Deactivation by the driver or by the system during manoeuvring will be indicated by Parking Deactivated in the Driver Information Centre.

Fault
A message appears in the Driver Information Centre when:
- there is a fault in the system
- the driver did not successfully complete the parking manoeuvre
- the system is not operational

If an object is detected during parking instructions, Stop is indicated in the Driver Information Centre. Removing the object will resume the parking manoeuvre. If the object is not removed, the system will be deactivated. Push button ◊ for approx. one second to activate the system and search for a new parking slot.

Important hints for using the parking assist systems

⚠️ Warning
Under certain circumstances, various reflective surfaces on objects or clothing as well as external noise sources may cause the system to fail to detect obstacles.

Special attention has to be paid to low obstacles which can damage the lower part of the bumper.
Driving and operating

Caution

Performance of the sensor can be reduced when sensors are covered, e.g. by ice or snow.
Performance of the parking assist system can be reduced due to heavy loading.
Special conditions apply if there are taller vehicles involved (e.g. off-road vehicles, mini vans, vans). Object identification in the upper part of these vehicles cannot be guaranteed.
Objects with a very small reflection cross section, like objects of narrow size or soft materials, may not be detected by the system.
Parking assist will not detect objects out of the detection range.

Note

The parking assist system automatically detects factory-fitted towing equipment. It is deactivated when the connector is plugged in.

It is possible that the sensor detects a non-existing object (echo disturbance) caused by external acoustical or mechanic disturbances.
Advanced parking assist system may not respond to changes in the parking space after initiating a parallel parking manoeuvre.

Side blind spot alert

The Side blind spot alert system detects and reports objects on either side of the vehicle, within a specified "blind spot” zone. The system alerts visually in each exterior mirror, when detecting objects that may not be visible in the interior and exterior mirrors.
The system’s sensors are located in the bumper on the left and right side of the vehicle.

Warning

Side blind spot alert does not replace driver vision.
The system does not detect:
- Vehicles outside the side blind zones which may be rapidly approaching.
- Pedestrians, cyclists or animals.
Before changing a lane, always check all mirrors, look over the shoulder and use the turn signal.

When the system detects a vehicle in the side blind zone while driving forward, either while passing a vehicle or being passed, an amber warning symbol \[\text{amber}\] will illuminate in the relevant exterior mirror. If the driver then activates the turn signal, the warning symbol \[\text{amber}\] starts flashing amber as a warning not to change lanes.
Driving and operating

The system can be activated or deactivated in the menu Settings in the Info-Display, vehicle personalisation 134. Deactivation is indicated by a message in the Driver Information Centre.

**Detection zones**
The system sensor covers a zone of approx. 3 metres on both sides of the vehicle. This zone starts at each exterior mirror and extends rearwards by approx. 3 metres. The height of the zone is approx. between 0.5 metres and 2 metres off the ground.

The system is deactivated if the vehicle is towing a trailer.

Side blind spot alert is designed to ignore stationary objects such as guardrails, posts, curbs, walls and beams. Parked vehicles or oncoming vehicles are not detected.

**Fault**
Occasional missed alerts can occur under normal circumstances.

Side blind spot alert does not operate when the left or right corners of the rear bumper are covered with mud, dirt, snow, ice or slush. Cleaning instructions 279.

In the event of a fault in the system or if the system does not work due to temporary conditions, a message is displayed in the Driver Information Centre. Seek the assistance of a workshop.

**Rear view camera**
The rear view camera assists the driver when reversing by displaying a view of the area behind the vehicle.

The view of the camera is displayed in the Colour-Info-Display.

⚠️ **Warning**
The rear view camera does not replace driver vision. Note that objects that are outside the camera's field of view and the advanced parking assist sensors,
e.g. below the bumper or underneath the vehicle, are not displayed.

Do not reverse the vehicle by only looking at the Info-Display and check the surrounding area behind and around the vehicle before reversing.

**Activation**
Rear view camera is automatically activated when reverse gear is engaged.

**Functionality**

The camera is mounted in the tailgate handle and has a viewing angle of 130°.

Due to the high position of the camera the rear bumper can be seen on the display as a guide to position.

The area displayed by the camera is limited. The distance of the image that appears on the display differs from the actual distance.

**Warning symbols**
Warning symbols are indicated as triangles on the picture which show obstacles detected by the rear sensors of the advanced parking assist.

**Display settings**

Brightness can be set with the up/down buttons of the multifunction knob.

Contrast can be set with left/right buttons of the multifunction knob.
**Deactivation**
The camera is deactivated when a certain forward speed is exceeded or if reverse gear is not engaged for approx. 10 seconds. Activation or deactivation of the rear view camera can be changed in the menu **Settings** in the Info-Display. Vehicle personalisation ▶ 134.

**Fault**
Fault messages are displayed with a ⬇️ on the top line of the Info-Display. The rear view camera may not operate properly when:
- the surrounding is dark,
- the sun or the beam of headlights is shining directly into the camera lens,
- ice, snow, mud, or anything else covers the camera lens. Clean the lens, rinse it with water, and wipe it with a soft cloth,
- the tailgate is not closed correctly,
- the vehicle had a rear end accident,
- there are extreme temperature changes.

## Traffic sign assistant

### Functionality
The traffic sign assistant system detects designated traffic signs via a front camera and displays them in the Driver Information Centre.

Traffic signs, which will be detected, are:

- **Limit and no passing signs**
  - speed limit
  - no passing
  - end of speed limit
  - end of no passing

### Road signs
Beginning and end of:
- motorways
- A-roads
- play streets

### Add on signs
- additional hints to traffic signs
- restriction of trailer towing
- wet warning
- ice warning
- direction arrows

Speed limit signs are displayed in the Driver Information Centre until the next speed limit sign or end of speed limit is detected or up to a defined sign timeout.
Driving and operating

Combinations of more signs in the display are possible.

An exclamation mark in a frame indicates that there is an add on sign detected which cannot be recognised by the system.

The system is active up to a speed of 200 km/h depending on the lighting conditions. At night the system is active up to a speed of 160 km/h.

As soon as the speed becomes slower than 55 km/h the display will be reset and the content of the traffic sign page will be cleared. The next recognised speed indication will be displayed.

Display indication

Traffic signs are displayed on the page Traffic sign detection on the Driver Information Centre, chosen via the adjuster wheel on the turn signal lever \(\diamond\) 121.

When another function on the Driver Information Centre menu was selected and then Traffic sign detection page is chosen again, the last recognised traffic sign will be displayed.

After the traffic sign page is cleared by the system, the following symbol is indicated:
The content of the traffic sign page is also cleared during driving by pushing the SET/CLR button on the turn signal lever for a longer time.

Pop-up function
Speed limits and no passing signs are displayed as pop-ups on each page of the Driver Information Centre.

The pop-up function can be deactivated on the traffic sign page by pressing the SET/CLR button on the turn signal lever.

Once setting page is displayed, select Off to deactivate pop-up function. Reactivated by selecting On. When switching on the ignition, pop-up function is deactivated. Pop-up indication is displayed for approx. 8 seconds in the Driver Information Centre.

Fault
The traffic sign assistant system may not operate correctly when:
- the area of the windscreen, where the front camera is located, is not clean
- traffic signs are completely or partially covered or difficult to discern
- there are adverse environmental conditions, e.g. heavy rain, snow, direct sunlight or shadows. In this case No Traffic Sign Detection due to Weather is indicated on the display
Driving and operating

- Traffic signs are incorrectly mounted or damaged
- Traffic signs do not comply with the Vienna Convention on traffic signs (Wiener Übereinkommen über Straßenverkehrszeichen)

Caution

The system is intended to help the driver within a defined speed range to discern certain traffic signs. Do not ignore traffic signs which are not displayed by the system.

The system does not discern any other than the conventional traffic signs that might give or end a speed limit.

Do not let this special feature tempt you into taking risks when driving.

Always adapt speed to the road conditions.

The driver assistance systems do not relieve the driver from full responsibility for vehicle operation.

Lane departure warning

The lane departure warning system observes the lane markings between which the vehicle is driving via a front camera. The system detects lane changes and warns the driver in the event of an unintended lane change via visual and acoustic signals.

Criteria for the detection of an unintended lane change are:
- No operation of turn signals
- No brake pedal operation
- No active accelerator operation or speeding-up
- No active steering

If the driver is active, no warning will be issued.

Activation

The lane departure warning system is activated by pressing the \( \text{\button} \) button.

The illuminated LED in the button indicates that the system is switched on. When the control indicator \( \text{\button} \) in the instrument cluster illuminates green, the system is ready to operate.

The system is only operable at vehicle speeds above 56 km/h and if lane markings are available.
When the system recognises an unintended lane change, the control indicator changes to yellow and flashes. Simultaneously a chime sound is activated.

Fault
The lane departure warning system may not operate properly when:
- the windscreen is not clean
- there are adverse environmental conditions like heavy rain, snow, direct sunlight or shadows

The system can not operate when no lane marking is detected.

Deactivation
The system is deactivated by pressing button, the LED in the button extinguishes.
At speeds below 56 km/h the system is inoperable.

Fuel
Fuel for petrol engines
Only use unleaded fuel that complies with European standard EN 228 or E DIN 51626-1 or equivalent.
Your engine is capable to run with E10 fuel that fulfills these standards. E10 fuel contains up to 10 % bioethanol.

Use fuel with the recommended octane rating 291. Use of fuel with too low an octane rating can reduce engine power and torque and slightly increases fuel consumption.

Caution
Do not use fuel or fuel additives that contain metallic compounds such as manganese-based additives. This may cause engine damage.
**Caution**

Use of fuel that does not comply to EN 228 or E DIN 51626-1 or equivalent can lead to deposits or engine damage and may affect your warranty.

---

**Caution**

Use of fuel with too low an octane rating could lead to uncontrolled combustion and engine damage.

---

### Fuel for diesel engines

Only use diesel fuel that complies with EN 590.

In countries outside the European Union use Euro-Diesel fuel with a sulphur concentration below 50 ppm.

---

### Fuel for liquid gas operation

Liquid gas is known as LPG (Liquefied Petroleum Gas) or under its French name GPL (Gaz de Pétrole Liquéfié). LPG is also known as Autogas.

LPG consists mainly of propane and butane. The octane rating is between 105 and 115, depending on the butane proportion. LPG is stored liquid at around 5 - 10 bar pressure.

---

**Caution**

Use of fuel that does not comply to EN 590 or similar can lead to engine power loss, increased wear or engine damage and may affect your warranty.

**Caution**

Do not use marine diesel oils, heating oils, Aquazole and similar diesel-water emulsions. Diesel fuels must not be diluted with fuels for petrol engines.

**Caution**

The system works at an ambient temperature of approx. -8 °C to 100 °C.

Full function of the LPG system can only be guaranteed with liquid gas which complies with the minimum requirements of DIN EN 589.

### Fuel selector

The boiling point depends on the pressure and mixing ratio. At ambient pressure, it is between -42 °C (pure propane) and -0.5 °C (pure butane).
Pressing the **LPG** button switches between petrol and liquid gas operation as soon as the required parameters (coolant temperature, gas temperature and minimum engine speed) have been reached. The requirements are usually fulfilled after around 60 seconds (depending on exterior temperature) and the first firm press on the accelerator. The LED status shows the current operating mode.

- off = petrol operation
- illuminates = liquid gas operation
- flashes = no switching is possible, one type of fuel is empty

As soon as the liquid gas tanks are empty, petrol operation is automatically engaged until the ignition is switched off.

Every six months, run the petrol tank down until control indicator illuminates, then refuel. This helps maintain fuel quality and system function for petrol operation.

Fill the tank completely at regular intervals to prevent corrosion in the tank.

**Faults and remedies**

If gas mode is not possible, check the following:

- Is there enough liquid gas present?
- Is there enough petrol present for starting?

Due to extreme temperatures in combination with the gas composition, it may take slightly longer before the system switches from petrol to gas mode.

In extreme situations, the system may also switch back to petrol mode if the minimum requirements are not fulfilled.

Seek the assistance of a workshop in the event of all other faults.

---

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Caution</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Repairs and adjustments may only be made by trained specialists in order to maintain the safety and warranty on the LPG system.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Liquid gas is given a particular odour (odorised) so that any leaks can be detected easily.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Warning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>If you smell gas in the vehicle or in the immediate vicinity, switch to petrol mode immediately. No smoking. No naked flames or ignition sources.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

If possible, close the manual shut-off valve on the multivalve. The multivalve is located on the liquid gas tank in the load compartment, underneath the rear floor cover.
Turn the thumb wheel clockwise. If no further gas odour is perceptible when the manual shut-off valve is closed, the vehicle can be used in petrol mode. If the gas odour persists, do not start the engine. Have the cause of the fault remedied by a workshop.

When using underground car parks, follow the instructions of the operator and local laws.

**Note**
In the event of an accident, switch off the ignition and lights. Close the manual shut-off valve on multivalve.

### Refuelling

**Danger**
Fuel is flammable and explosive. No smoking. No naked flames or sparks.
If you can smell fuel in your vehicle, have the cause of this remedied immediately by a workshop.

**Caution**
In case of misfuelling, do not switch on ignition.

Fuel filler flap is located at right rear side of the vehicle.

Before refuelling, switch off engine and any external heaters with combustion chambers. Switch off any mobile phones.
Follow the operating and safety instructions of the filling station when refuelling.
The fuel filler flap can only be opened if the vehicle is unlocked. Release the fuel filler flap by pushing the flap. To open, turn the cap slowly to the left.

The fuel filler cap can be retained in the bracket on the fuel filler flap. For refuelling, fully insert the pump nozzle and switch it on. After automatic cut-off, it can be topped up with max. two doses of fuel.

**Caution**

Wipe off any overflowing fuel immediately.

To close, turn the fuel filler cap to the right until it clicks. Close the flap and let engage.

**Liquid gas refuelling**

Follow the operating and safety instructions of the filling station when refuelling.

The filling valve for the liquid gas is behind the fuel filler cap.

Unscrew protective cap from the filler neck.
Screw the required adapter hand-tight onto the filler neck.

**ACME Adapter:** Screw the nut of the filling nozzle onto the adapter. Press locking lever on filler nozzle down.

**DISH (Italy) filler neck:** Place the filler nozzle into the adapter. Press locking lever on filler nozzle down.

**Bayonet filler neck:** Place filler nozzle on the adapter and turn to the left or right through one quarter turn. Pull locking lever of filler nozzle fully.

**EURO filler neck:** Press the filler nozzle onto the adapter until it engages.

Press the button of the liquid gas supply point. The filling system stops or begins to run slowly when 80% of the tank volume is reached (maximum fill level).

Release button on filling system and the filling process stops. Release the locking lever and remove the filler nozzle. A small quantity of liquid gas can escape.

Remove adapter and stow in vehicle.

Fit protective cap to prevent the penetration of foreign bodies into the filler opening and the system.

---

⚠️ **Warning**

Due to the system design, an escape of liquid gas after releasing the locking lever is unavoidable. Avoid inhaling.

⚠️ **Warning**

The liquid gas tank may only be filled to 80% for safety reasons.

The multivalue on the liquid gas tank automatically limits the fill quantity. If a larger quantity is added, we recommend not exposing the vehicle to the sun until the excess amount has been used up.

**Filling adapter**

As filling systems are not standardised, different adapters are required which are available from Opel Distributors and from Opel Authorised Repairers.
Driving and operating

ACME adapter: Belgium, Germany, Ireland, Luxembourg, Switzerland

Bayonet adapter: Netherlands, Norway, Spain, United Kingdom

EURO adapter: Spain

DISH (Italy) adapter: Bosnia-Herzegovina, Bulgaria, Denmark, Estonia, France, Greece, Italy,

Croatia, Latvia, Lithuania, Macedonia, Austria, Poland, Portugal, Romania, Sweden, Switzerland, Serbia, Slovakia, Slovenia, Czech Republic, Turkey, Ukraine, Hungary

Fuel filler cap
Only use genuine fuel filler caps. Diesel-engined vehicles have special fuel filler caps.

Fuel consumption - CO$_2$-Emissions
The fuel consumption (combined) of the model Opel Astra is within a range of 8.1 to 3.7 l/100 km. The CO$_2$ emission (combined) is within a range of 189 to 99 g/km. For the values specific to your vehicle, refer to the EEC Certificate of Conformity provided with your vehicle or other national registration documents.
General information
The official fuel consumption and specific CO₂ emission figures quoted relate to the EU base model with standard equipment.
Fuel consumption data and CO₂ emission data are determined according to regulation R (EC) No. 715/2007 (in the latest applicable version), taking into consideration the vehicle weight in running order, as specified by the regulation.
The figures are provided only for the purpose of comparison between different vehicle variants and must not be taken as a guarantee for the actual fuel consumption of a particular vehicle. Additional equipment may result in slightly higher results than the stated consumption and CO₂ figures.
Furthermore, fuel consumption is dependent on personal driving style as well as road and traffic conditions.

Trailer hitch
General information
Only use towing equipment that has been approved for your vehicle.
Entrust retrofitting of towing equipment to a workshop. It may be necessary to make changes that affect the cooling system, heat shields or other equipment.
The bulb outage detection function for trailer brake light cannot detect a partial bulb outage, e.g. in case of 4 x 5 Watt bulbs, the function only detects lamp outage when only a single 5 Watt lamp remains or none remain.
Fitting of towing equipment could cover the opening of the towing eye. If this is the case use the coupling ball bar for towing. Always keep the coupling ball bar in the vehicle.

Driving characteristics and towing tips
Before attaching a trailer, lubricate the coupling ball. However, do not do so if a stabiliser, which acts on the coupling ball, is being used to reduce snaking movements.
For trailers with low driving stability and caravan trailers with a permitted gross vehicle weight of more than 1300 kg (Sports tourer: 1200 kg) the use of a stabiliser is strongly recommended when driving above 80 km/h.
If the trailer starts snaking, drive more slowly, do not attempt to correct the steering and brake sharply if necessary.
When driving downhill, drive in the same gear as if driving uphill and drive at a similar speed.
Adjust tyre pressure to the value specified for full load 308.
**Trailer towing**

**Trailer loads**

The permissible trailer loads are vehicle and engine-dependent maximum values which must not be exceeded. The actual trailer load is the difference between the actual gross weight of the trailer and the actual coupling socket load with the trailer coupled.

The permissible trailer loads are specified in the vehicle documents. In general, they are valid for gradients up to max. 12%.

The permitted trailer load applies up to the specified incline and up to an altitude of 1000 metres above sea level. Since engine power decreases as altitude increases due to the air becoming thinner, therefore reducing climbing ability, the permissible gross train weight also decreases by 10% for every 1000 metres of additional altitude. The gross train weight does not have to be reduced when driving on roads with slight inclines (less than 8%, e.g. motorways).

The permissible gross train weight must not be exceeded. This weight is specified on the identification plate 286.

**Vertical coupling load**

The vertical coupling load is the load exerted by the trailer on the coupling ball. It can be varied by changing the weight distribution when loading the trailer.

The maximum permissible vertical coupling load (75 kg) is specified on the towing equipment identification plate and in the vehicle documents. Always aim for the maximum load, especially in the case of heavy trailers. The vertical coupling load should never fall below 25 kg.

**Rear axle load**

When the trailer is coupled and the towing vehicle fully loaded, the permissible rear axle load (see identification plate or vehicle documents) may be exceeded by 60 kg, the gross vehicle weight rating may be exceeded by 60 kg. If the permissible rear axle load is exceeded, a maximum speed of 100 km/h applies.

**Towing equipment**

**Caution**

When operating without a trailer, remove the coupling ball bar.
Stowage of coupling ball bar

The bag with the coupling ball bar is stowed in the rear stowage compartment on the floor.
Place the strap through the lashing eye, wrap around twice and tighten the strap to secure the bag.

Fitting the coupling ball bar

All versions except 3-door hatchback:
Press fastenings inward and fold the cover downward at the front. Remove cover.

Disengage and fold down the socket. Remove the sealing plug from the opening for the coupling ball bar and stow it.
Driving and operating

Checking the tensioning of the coupling ball bar

- Red marking on rotary knob must point towards green marking on coupling ball bar.
- The gap between the rotary knob and the coupling ball bar must be approx. 6 mm.
- The key must be in position e.
Otherwise, the coupling ball bar must be tensioned before being inserted:
- Unlock coupling ball bar by turning key to position e.

Inserting the coupling ball bar

- Pull out rotary knob and turn clockwise as far as it will go.

Insert the tensioned coupling ball bar in the opening and push firmly upwards until it audibly engages. The rotary handle snaps back into its original position resting against the coupling ball bar without a gap.

⚠️ Warning

Do not touch rotary handle during insertion.

Lock the coupling ball bar by turning the key to position e. Remove the key and close the protective flap.
Eye for break-away stopping cable

Attach breakaway stopping cable to eye.

Check that the coupling ball bar is correctly installed

- Green marking on rotary knob must point towards green marking on coupling ball bar.
- There must be no gap between the rotary handle and the coupling ball bar.

- The coupling ball bar must be firmly engaged in the opening.
- The coupling ball bar must be locked and the key removed.

⚠️ Warning

Towing a trailer is permitted only when a coupling ball bar is fitted correctly. If the coupling ball bar does not engage correctly, seek the assistance of a workshop.

Dismounting the coupling ball bar

Open the protective flap and turn the key to position 3 to unlock the coupling ball bar.

Pull out rotary handle and turn clockwise as far as it will go. Pull out coupling ball bar downwards.

Insert sealing plug in opening. Fold away socket.

All versions except 3-door hatchback: Attach the rear side of the cover into the recess of the bumper and fold the front side upward.

Press fastenings outward.
**Trailer stability assist**

If the system detects snaking movements, engine power is reduced and the vehicle/trailer combination is selectively braked until the snaking ceases. While system is working keep steering wheel as still as possible.

Trailer stability assist (TSA) is a function of the Electronic Stability Control $\ddagger$ 177.
General Information

Accessories and vehicle modifications
We recommend the use of genuine parts and accessories and factory approved parts specific for your vehicle type. We cannot assess or guarantee reliability of other products - even if they have a regulatory or otherwise granted approval.
Do not make any modifications to the electrical system, e.g. changes of electronic control units (chip tuning).

Caution
When transporting the vehicle on a train or on a recovery vehicle, the mud flaps might be damaged.

Vehicle storage
Storage for a long period of time
If the vehicle is to be stored for several months:
■ Wash and wax the vehicle.
■ Have the wax in the engine compartment and underbody checked.
■ Clean and preserve the rubber seals.
■ Fill up fuel tank completely.
■ Change the engine oil.
■ Drain the washer fluid reservoir.
■ Check the coolant antifreeze and corrosion protection.
■ Adjust tyre pressure to the value specified for full load.
■ Park the vehicle in a dry, well ventilated place. Engage first or reverse gear or set selector lever to P. Prevent the vehicle from rolling.
■ Do not apply the parking brake.
Vehicle care

- Open the bonnet, close all doors and lock the vehicle.
- Disconnect the clamp from the negative terminal of the vehicle battery. Beware that all systems are not functional, e.g. anti-theft alarm system.

**Putting back into operation**

When the vehicle is to be put back into operation:
- Connect the clamp to the negative terminal of the vehicle battery. Activate the electronics of the power windows.
- Check tyre pressure.
- Fill up the washer fluid reservoir.
- Check the engine oil level.
- Check the coolant level.
- Fit the number plate if necessary.

**End-of-life vehicle recovery**

Information on end-of-life vehicle recovery centres and the recycling of end-of-life vehicles is available on our website, where legally required. Only entrust this work to an authorised recycling centre. Gas vehicles must be recycled by a service centre authorised for gas vehicles.

---

**Vehicle checks**

**Performing work**

---

**Warning**

Only perform engine compartment checks when the ignition is off. The cooling fan may start operating even if the ignition is off.
Danger

The ignition system and Xenon headlights use extremely high voltage. Do not touch.

Bonnet

Opening

Pull the release lever and return it to its original position.

Move the safety catch sideways to the left vehicle side and open the bonnet.

Secure the bonnet support.

If the bonnet is opened during an Autostop, the engine will be restarted automatically for safety reasons.

Closing

Before closing the bonnet, press the support into the holder.

Lower the bonnet and let it fall into the latch from a low height (20-25 cm).

Check that the bonnet is engaged.

Caution

Do not press the bonnet into the latch to avoid dents.

Engine oil

Check the engine oil level manually on a regular basis to prevent damage to the engine. Ensure that the correct specification of oil is used.

Recommended fluids and lubricants 284.

Check with the vehicle on a level surface. The engine must be at operating temperature and switched off for at least 5 minutes.
Pull out the dipstick, wipe it clean, insert it to the stop on the handle, pull out and read the engine oil level. Insert dipstick to the stop on the handle and make half a turn.

When the engine oil level has dropped to the MIN mark, top up engine oil.

We recommend the use of the same grade of engine oil that was used at last change. The engine oil level must not exceed the MAX mark on the dipstick.

Caution

Overfilled engine oil must be drained or suctioned out.

Capacities 307.

Fit the cap on straight and tighten it.

Engine coolant

The coolant provides freeze protection down to approx. -28 °C. In northern countries with very low temperatures the factory filled coolant provides frost protection down to approx. -37°C.

Caution

Only use approved antifreeze.
Coolant level

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Caution</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Too low a coolant level can cause engine damage.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

If the cooling system is cold, the coolant level should be above the filling line mark. Top up if the level is low.

⚠️ Warning

Allow the engine to cool before opening the cap. Carefully open the cap, relieving the pressure slowly.

To top up use a 1:1 mixture of released coolant concentrate mixed with clean tap water. If no coolant concentrate is available, use clean tap water. Install the cap tightly. Have the coolant concentration checked and have the cause of the coolant loss remedied by a workshop.

Power steering fluid

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Caution</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Extremely small amounts of contamination can cause steering system damage and cause it to not work properly. Do not allow contaminates to contact the fluid side of the reservoir cap/dipstick or from entering the reservoir.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Power steering fluid level normally does not have to be checked. If an unusual noise sounds during steering or the power steering reacts unusually, seek the assistance of a workshop.
Washer fluid

Fill with clean water mixed with a suitable quantity of windscreen washer fluid which contains antifreeze.

Caution

Only washer fluid with a sufficient antifreeze concentration provides protection at low temperatures or a sudden drop in temperature.

Brakes

In the event of minimum thickness of the brake lining, a squealing noise sounds during braking.

Continued driving is possible but have the brake lining replaced as soon as possible.

Once new brake linings are installed, do not brake unnecessarily hard for the first few journeys.

Brake fluid

⚠️ Warning

Brake fluid is poisonous and corrosive. Avoid contact with eyes, skin, fabrics and painted surfaces.

The brake fluid level must be between the MIN and MAX marks.

If fluid level is below MIN seek the assistance of a workshop.

Brake and clutch fluid 284.

Vehicle battery

Vehicles without stop-start system will be equipped with a lead acid battery. Vehicles with stop-start system will be equipped with an AGM battery which is not a lead acid battery.
The vehicle battery is maintenance-free provided that the driving profile allows sufficient charging of the battery. Short-distance-driving and frequent engine starts can discharge the battery. Avoid the use of unnecessary electrical consumers.

Batteries do not belong in household waste. They must be disposed of at an appropriate recycling collection point.

Laying up the vehicle for more than 4 weeks can lead to battery discharge. Disconnect the clamp from the negative terminal of the vehicle battery.

Ensure the ignition is switched off before connecting or disconnecting the vehicle battery.

Vehicle battery discharge protection \(\diamond\) 151.

### Replacing the vehicle battery

**Note**

Any deviation from the instructions given in this section may lead to temporary deactivation of the stop-start system.

When the vehicle battery is being replaced, please ensure that there are no open ventilation holes in the vicinity of the positive terminal. If a ventilation hole is open in this area, it must be closed off with a dummy cap, and the ventilation in the vicinity of the negative terminal must be opened.

Only use vehicle batteries that allow the fuse box to be mounted above the vehicle battery.

In vehicles with stop-start system, be sure to have the AGM (Absorptive Glass Mat) battery replaced with another AGM battery.

An AGM battery can be identified by the label on the battery. We recommend the use of an original Opel vehicle battery.

**Note**

Using an AGM vehicle battery different from the original Opel vehicle battery may result in a lower performance of the stop-start system.

We recommend that you have the vehicle battery replaced by a workshop.

Stop-start system \(\diamond\) 165.
Charging the vehicle battery

⚠️ Warning

On vehicles with stop-start system, ensure that the charging potential does not exceed 14.6 volts when using a battery charger. Otherwise the vehicle battery might be damaged.

Jump starting ✨ 276.

Warning label

Meaning of symbols:
- No sparks, naked flames or smoking.
- Always shield eyes. Explosive gases can cause blindness or injury.
- Keep the vehicle battery out of reach of children.
- The vehicle battery contains sulphuric acid which could cause blindness or serious burn injuries.
- See the Owner's Manual for further information.
- Explosive gas may be present in the vicinity of the vehicle battery.

Diesel fuel system bleeding

If the tank has been run dry, the diesel fuel system must be bled. Switch on the ignition three times for 15 seconds at a time. Then crank the engine for a maximum of 40 seconds. Repeat this process after no less than 5 seconds. If the engine fails to start, seek the assistance of a workshop.

Wiper blade replacement
Vehicle care

Lift the wiper arm until it stays in the raised position, press button to disengage the wiper blade and remove.
Attach the wiper blade slightly angled to the wiper arm and push until it engages.
Lower wiper arm carefully.

**Wiper blade on the rear window**

Lift wiper arm. Disengage wiper blade as shown in illustration and remove.
Attach the wiper blade slightly angled to the wiper arm and push until it engages.
Lower wiper arm carefully.

**Bulb replacement**

Switch off the ignition and switch off the relevant switch or close the doors.
Only hold a new bulb at the base. Do not touch the bulb glass with bare hands.
Use only the same bulb type for replacement.
Replace headlight bulbs from within the engine compartment.

**Bulb check**

After a bulb replacement switch on the ignition, operate and check the lights.
Halogen headlights
5-door hatchback, 4-door notchback, Sports tourer

Halogen headlights with separate bulbs for low beam and high beam.

Low beam (1) outer bulb.
High beam (2) inner bulb.
Sidelight/Daytime running light (3).

1. Rotate the cap (1) anticlockwise and remove it.
2. Rotate the bulb holder anticlockwise to disengage. Withdraw the bulb holder from the reflector.
3. Detach the bulb from the bulb holder and replace the bulb.
4. Insert the bulb holder, engaging the two lugs into the reflector and rotate clockwise to secure.
5. Fit the cap and rotate clockwise.
High beam (2)

1. Rotate the cap (2) anticlockwise and remove it.
2. Rotate the bulb holder anticlockwise to disengage. Withdraw the bulb holder from the reflector.
3. Detach the bulb from the bulb holder and replace the bulb.
4. Insert the bulb holder, engaging the two lugs into the reflector and rotate clockwise to secure.
5. Fit the cap and rotate clockwise.

Sidelights/Daytime running light (3)

1. Rotate the cap (3) anticlockwise and remove it. Use the screwdriver to rotate the cap.
2. Press latches together and withdraw the bulb holder from the reflector.
3. Remove the bulb from the socket and replace the bulb.
4. Insert the bulb holder into the reflector. Fit the cap and rotate clockwise.
3-door hatchback

Bi-Halogen Headlight (1) with one bulb for low and high beam. Sidelight/Daytime running light (2).

Low/High beam (1)

1. Rotate the cap (1) anticlockwise and remove it.

2. Rotate the bulb holder anticlockwise to disengage. Withdraw the bulb holder from the reflector.

3. Disengage the bulb holder from the plug connector by pressing the retaining lug.

4. Replace the bulb and connect bulb holder with the plug connector.

5. Insert the bulb holder, engaging the two lugs into the reflector and rotate clockwise to secure.

6. Fit the cap and rotate clockwise.
Sidelight/Daytime running light (2)

1. Rotate bulb socket (2) anticlockwise to disengage. Withdraw the bulb socket from the reflector.

2. Remove the bulb from the socket by pulling.

3. Replace and insert new bulb into socket.

4. Insert the bulb socket into the reflector and turn clockwise.

Adaptive forward lighting

⚠️ Danger

Adaptive forward lighting system uses Xenon headlights.
Xenon headlights work under extremely high electrical voltage. Do not touch. Have bulbs replaced by a workshop.

Sidelight/Daytime running lights are designed as Light Emitting Diodes (LEDs) and cannot be changed.
Bulbs for corner lighting can be changed.
Corner lighting

1. Rotate the cap anticlockwise and remove it.

2. Rotate the bulb holder anticlockwise to disengage. Withdraw the bulb holder from the reflector.

3. Disengage the bulb from the plug connector by pulling.

4. Replace the bulb and connect bulb holder with the plug connector.

5. Insert the bulb holder, engaging the two lugs into the reflector and rotate clockwise to secure.

6. Fit the cap and rotate clockwise.

Fog lights

5-door hatchback, 4-door notchback, Sports tourer

1. Release both caps with a screwdriver at the marked area.
2. Unscrew both screws and remove turn light assembly from the bumper.

3. Unscrew three screws and remove fog light assembly from the bumper.

4. Turn the bulb socket anti-clockwise and remove it from the reflector.

5. Disengage the bulb socket from the plug connector by pressing the retaining lug.

6. Replace and insert bulb socket into the reflector, turn socket clockwise and attach the plug connector.

7. Attach fog light assembly into the bumper and fix with three screws.

8. Attach turn light assembly into the bumper and fix with two screws.

9. Engage both caps.

3-door hatchback

1. Disengage the cover with a screwdriver in the recess and remove the cover.
2. Unscrew both screws and remove light assembly from the bumper.

3. Turn the bulb socket anti-clockwise and remove it from the reflector.

4. Disengage the bulb socket from the plug connector by pressing the retaining lug.

5. Remove and replace the bulb socket with bulb and attach the plug connector.

6. Insert the bulb socket into the reflector by turning clockwise and engage.

7. Mount the light assembly by tightening both screws.

8. Assemble and engage the cover.

Front turn signal lights
5-door hatchback, 4-door notchback, Sports tourer

1. Release both caps with a screwdriver at the marked area.
2. Unscrew both screws and remove light assembly from the bumper.

3. Disengage the bulb socket from the reflector by pressing both retaining lugs.

4. Disengage the plug connector from the bulb socket by pressing the retaining lug.

5. Remove and replace the bulb socket with bulb.

6. Insert the bulb socket into the reflector and attach the plug connector.

7. Attach light assembly into the bumper and fix with both screws.

8. Engage both caps.

5-door hatchback, 4-door notchback, Sports tourer with Sport/GSi front bumper
The bulbs are accessible from beneath the vehicle.

1. Disengage the spring clip and then swivel it backwards.

2. Pull the bulb socket with bulb out of the reflector.
3. Disengage the bulb socket from the plug connector by pressing the retaining lug.
4. Remove and replace the bulb socket with bulb.
5. Attach the plug connector.
6. Insert the bulb socket into the reflector.
7. Swivel the spring clip forwards and engage.

2. Rotate bulb socket anticlockwise to disengage and withdraw from the reflector.

3. Remove the bulb from the socket by turning anticlockwise.
4. Replace and insert new bulb into socket by turning clockwise.
5. Insert the bulb socket into the reflector and turn clockwise.
6. Fit the cap and rotate clockwise.
Tail lights
5-door hatchback

1. Release the cover on the respective side and remove it.

2. Unscrew the plastic securing nut from the inside by hand.

3. Carefully withdraw the tail light assembly from recesses and remove. Make sure that the cable duct remains in position.

4. Detach the cable from the retainer.

5. Detach the wiring plug from the bulb carrier.

6. Unscrew the three screws with a screwdriver and remove the bulb carrier from the light assembly.
7. Remove and replace the bulb by withdrawing or pushing the bulb slightly into the socket and rotating anticlockwise:
   Tail light (1)
   Brake light (2)
   Turn signal light (3)
8. Insert the bulb carrier into the tail light assembly and screw into place. Connect the wiring plug and press the cable into the retainer. Fit light assembly with the retaining pins into the recesses of the car body and tighten the securing nut from the inside of the load compartment.

1. Open the tailgate and remove the cover and both blind cover on the respective side.
2. Unscrew and remove three screws.
3. Remove the light assembly. Make sure that the cable duct remains in position.

4. Press the retaining lug and remove the bulb carrier from the light assembly.
5. Remove and replace the bulb by withdrawing or pushing the bulb slightly into the socket and rotating anticlockwise:
   Tail light (1)
   Rear fog light/Reverse light (2), depending on the side.
6. Insert the bulb carrier into the tail light assembly. Fit light assembly on the tailgate and tighten the screws from the inside. Attach all covers.

4-door notchback

1. Remove cover on the responding side.

2. Unscrew two plastic securing nuts from the inside by hand.

3. Carefully withdraw tail light assembly from recesses and remove. Make sure that the cable duct remains in position.

4. Detach wiring plug from bulb carrier.

5. Remove the bulb holder by turning and replace the bulb by withdrawing or pushing the bulb slightly into the socket and rotating anticlockwise:
   Tail light/Brake light (1)
Vehicle care

Turn signal light (2)
6. Insert bulb holder and turn clockwise. Connect the wiring plug. Fit light assembly with the retaining pins into the recesses of the car body and tighten the securing nuts from the inside of the load compartment. Attach cover.

Light assembly in the tailgate

1. Open the tailgate and remove the cover on the respective side.

2. Remove the bulb holder by turning and replace the bulb by withdrawing or pushing the bulb slightly into the socket and rotating anticlockwise:
   Tail light (1)
   Rear fog light/Reverse light (2), depending on the side.
3. Insert bulb holder and turn clockwise. Attach cover.

Sports tourer

1. On left-hand side, fold down the blind and remove.
2. Remove cover on the respective side.

3. Unscrew two plastic securing nuts from the inside by hand.

4. Carefully withdraw tail light assembly from recesses and remove. Make sure that the cable duct remains in position.

5. Detach wiring plug from bulb carrier.

6. Remove the bulb holder by turning anticlockwise and replace the bulb by withdrawing or pushing the bulb slightly into the socket and rotating anticlockwise:
   - Tail lights (1 + 2)
   - Turn signal light (3)
   - Brake light (4)

7. Connect the wiring plug and press the cable into the retainer. Fit light assembly with the retaining pins into the recesses of the car body and tighten the securing nuts from the inside of the load compartment. Attach cover.

When assembling press the blind on the left-hand side into the rubber grommets to reach full retention force.
1. Open the tailgate and remove the blind covers on the respective side.
2. Unscrew and remove the screws.
3. Remove the tail light assembly and detach wiring plug from the bulb carrier.

4. Remove the bulb holder by turning anticlockwise and replace the bulb by withdrawing or pushing the bulb slightly into the socket and rotating anticlockwise:
   Tail light (1)
   Rear fog light/Reverse light (2), depending on the side.
5. Fit the light assembly in the tailgate and tighten the screws from the inside. Attach all covers.

Rear fog light respectively reverse light (2), depending on the side, can be replaced by a cover in the tailgate without removing the light assembly: remove cover, turn bulb holder and replace the bulb by rotating anticlockwise.
3-door hatchback

1. Release the cover on the respective side and remove it.

2. Unscrew both plastic securing nuts from the inside by hand.

3. Carefully withdraw the light assembly from the recesses and remove.

4. Detach wiring plug from bulb carrier.

5. Remove the bulb holder by turning and replace the bulb by withdrawing or pushing the bulb slightly into the socket and rotating anticlockwise:
   - Tail light/Brake light (1)
   - Turn signal light (2)
   version with Light Emitting Diode (LED)
Only turn signal light (2) can be changed.

6. Insert and turn bulb holder clockwise into the tail light assembly. Connect the wiring plug with the light assembly. Fit light assembly with the retaining pins into the recesses of the car body and tighten the securing nuts from the inside of the load compartment. Close cover and engage.

**Light assembly in the tailgate**

1. Open the tailgate and remove the covers on the respective side.

2. Unscrew three screws.
3. Remove the tail light assembly from tailgate.
4. Remove the bulb holder by turning and replace the bulb by withdrawing or pushing the bulb slightly into the socket and rotating anticlockwise:

5. Insert and turn bulb holder clockwise into the tail light assembly. Fit the tail light assembly in the tailgate and tighten the screws. Attach all covers.

**Side turn signal lights**

**3-door hatchback**

To replace bulb, remove lamp housing:

**Tail light (1)**

Rear fog light/Reverse light (2), depending on the side.

(2) (only one side)

version with Light Emitting Diode (LED)
1. Slide lamp to its left side and remove with its right end.

3. Pull bulb from bulb holder and replace it.

4. Insert bulb holder and turn clockwise.

5. Insert left end of the lamp, slide to the left and insert right end.

**5-door hatchback, 4-door notchback, Sports tourer**

To replace bulb, remove lamp housing:

2. Turn bulb holder anticlockwise and remove from housing.

1. Slide lamp to its left side and remove with its right end.

3. Pull bulb from bulb holder and replace it.

2. Turn bulb holder anticlockwise and remove from housing.
4. Insert bulb holder and turn clockwise.
5. Insert left end of the lamp, slide to the left and insert right end.

**Number plate light**

1. Insert screwdriver in recess of the cover, press to the side and release spring.
2. Remove lamp downwards, taking care not to pull on the cable.
3. Remove bulb holder from lamp housing by turning anticlockwise.
4. Pull bulb from bulb holder and replace it.
5. Insert bulb holder into lamp housing and turn clockwise.
6. Insert lamp into bumper and let engage.

**Interior lights**

**Courtesy light, reading lights**
Have bulbs replaced by a workshop.

**Load compartment light**
Have bulbs replaced by a workshop.

**Instrument panel illumination**
Have bulbs replaced by a workshop.
Electrical system

Fuses

Data on the replacement fuse must match the data on the defective fuse.

There are three fuse boxes in the vehicle:

- in the front left of the engine compartment,
- in left-hand drive vehicles, in the interior behind the storage compartment, or, in right-hand drive vehicles, behind the glovebox,
- behind a cover on the left side of the load compartment.

Before replacing a fuse, turn off the respective switch and the ignition.

A blown fuse can be recognized by its melted wire. Do not replace the fuse until the cause of the fault has been remedied.

Some functions are protected by several fuses.
Fuses may also be inserted without existence of a function.

Fuse extractor

A fuse extractor may be located in the fuse box in the engine compartment.

Place the fuse extractor on the various types of fuse from the top or side, and withdraw fuse.
Engine compartment fuse box

The fuse box is in the front left of the engine compartment. Disengage the cover and fold it upwards until it stops. Remove the cover vertically upwards.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>No.</th>
<th>Circuit</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Engine control module</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Lambda sensor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Fuel injection, ignition system</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Fuel injection, ignition system</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>Mirror heating, anti-theft alarm system</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>Fan control, engine control module, transmission control module</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>Lambda sensor, engine cooling</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>Rear window sensor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>Vehicle battery sensor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>Trunk release</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>Adaptive forward lighting, automatic light control</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>ABS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>Rear window wiper</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No.</td>
<td>Circuit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----</td>
<td>----------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>Engine control module</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16</td>
<td>Starter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17</td>
<td>Transmission control module</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18</td>
<td>Heated rear window</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19</td>
<td>Front power windows</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20</td>
<td>Rear power windows</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21</td>
<td>Rear electrical centre</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22</td>
<td>Left high beam (Halogen)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23</td>
<td>Headlamp washer system</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24</td>
<td>Right low beam (Xenon)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25</td>
<td>Left low beam (Xenon)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26</td>
<td>Front fog lights</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27</td>
<td>Diesel fuel heating</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28</td>
<td>Start stop system</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>29</td>
<td>Electric parking brake</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30</td>
<td>ABS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31</td>
<td>Adaptive cruise control</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>No.</th>
<th>Circuit</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>32</td>
<td>Airbag</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>33</td>
<td>Adaptive forward lighting, automatic light control</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34</td>
<td>Exhaust gas recirculation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35</td>
<td>Exterior mirror, rain sensor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36</td>
<td>Climate control</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>37</td>
<td>Canister vent solenoid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>38</td>
<td>Vacuum pump</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>39</td>
<td>Central control module</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40</td>
<td>Windscreen washer, rear window washer system</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>41</td>
<td>Right high beam (Halogen)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>42</td>
<td>Radiator fan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>43</td>
<td>Windscreen wiper</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>44</td>
<td>Windscreen wiper</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>45</td>
<td>Radiator fan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>46</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>No.</th>
<th>Circuit</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>47</td>
<td>Horn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>48</td>
<td>Radiator fan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>49</td>
<td>Fuel pump</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50</td>
<td>Headlamp levelling, adaptive forward lighting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>51</td>
<td>Air shutter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>52</td>
<td>Auxiliary heater, diesel engine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>53</td>
<td>Transmission control module, engine control module</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>54</td>
<td>Vacuum pump, instrument panel cluster, heating ventilation, air condition system</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

After having changed defective fuses, close the fuse box cover and press until it engages.
If the fuse box cover is not closed correctly, malfunction may occur.
Instrument panel fuse box

In left-hand drive vehicles, the fuse box is behind the storage compartment in the instrument panel. Open the compartment and push it to the left to unlock. Fold the compartment down and remove it.

In right-hand drive vehicles, the fuse box is located behind a cover in the glovebox. Open the glovebox, then open the cover and fold it down.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>No.</th>
<th>Circuit</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Displays</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Exterior lights, body control module</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Exterior lights, body control module</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Infotainment system</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>Infotainment system, instrument</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>Power outlet, cigarette lighter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>Power outlet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>Left low beam, body control module</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>Right low beam, body control module, airbag module</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>Door locks, body control module</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>Interior fan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No.</td>
<td>Circuit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----</td>
<td>-------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>Diagnostic connector</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>Airbag</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16</td>
<td>Power outlet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17</td>
<td>Air conditioning system</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18</td>
<td>Logistics</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19</td>
<td>Body control module</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20</td>
<td>Body control module</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21</td>
<td>Instrument panel cluster, anti-theft alarm system</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22</td>
<td>Ignition sensor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23</td>
<td>Body control module</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24</td>
<td>Body control module</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26</td>
<td>Power outlet load compartment (if no load compartment fuse box) (Sports tourer only)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Load compartment fuse box**

**3-door hatchback, 5-door hatchback**
The fuse box is on the left side of the load compartment behind a cover.

**Sports tourer**
The fuse box is on the left side of the load compartment behind a cover.

Fold down the blind and remove.

Remove the cover.

Remove the cover.
## Fuse assignments

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>No.</th>
<th>Circuit</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Trailer outlet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Parking assist</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>Power seat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>Trailer module, trailer socket</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>Trailer module</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>Trailer outlet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>Rear seat, electrical folding</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16</td>
<td>Inside mirror, rear view camera</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17</td>
<td>Power outlet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19</td>
<td>Steering wheel heating</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20</td>
<td>Sunroof</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21</td>
<td>Heated front seats</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>29</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31</td>
<td>Amplifier, subwoofer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>32</td>
<td>Active damping system, lane departure warning</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
When assembling press the blind into the rubber grommets to reach full retention force.

**Vehicle tools**

**Tools**

**Vehicles with tyre repair kit**
Some tools and the towing eye are located together with the tyre repair kit in a tool box in the load compartment below the floor cover.

**3-door and 5-door hatchback**

**Sports Tourer and 4-door notchback**

On version with rear carrier system 66, the tyre repair kit, a screwdriver and the towing eye are located in the drawer under the front passenger seat 64.
Vehicle care

Vehicles with spare wheel

Variant 1a: 3-door and 5-door hatchback with rigid wheel wrench

The jack, the tools and a strap for securing a damaged wheel are in the tool box below the spare wheel in the load compartment. The wheel wrench and the towing eye are in the tool bag located in the spare wheel well near the tool box. Spare wheel 271.

Variant 1b: 3-door and 5-door hatchback with foldable wheel wrench

Same content as variant 1a, but with a foldable wheel wrench instead of the rigid wheel wrench located in the tool bag.

Variant 2: Sports Tourer

The jack, the tools and the towing eye are in the tool box below the spare wheel in the load compartment. The wheel wrench and an extension bolt for securing a damaged wheel (only vehicles with temporary spare wheel) are in the tool bag located in the spare wheel well near the tool box. Spare wheel 271.
Variant 3: 4-door notchback

The jack and the tools are in the tool box below the spare wheel in the load compartment. The wheel wrench, the towing eye and an extension bolt for securing a damaged wheel (only vehicles with temporary spare wheel) are in the tool bag located in the spare wheel well near the tool box. Spare wheel 271.

Wheels and tyres

Tyre condition, wheel condition
Drive over edges slowly and at right angles if possible. Driving over sharp edges can cause tyre and wheel damage. Do not trap tyres on the kerb when parking.
Regularly check the wheels for damage. Seek the assistance of a workshop in the event of damage or unusual wear.

Winter tyres
Winter tyres improve driving safety at temperatures below 7 °C and should therefore be fitted on all wheels.
In accordance with country-specific regulations, affix the speed sticker in the driver's field of view.
OPC Version: Tyres of size 235/45 R18 are only permitted as winter tyres.

Tyre designations
E.g. 215/60 R 16 95 H
215 = Tyre width, mm
60 = Cross-section ratio (tyre height to tyre width), %
R = Belt type: Radial
RF = Type: RunFlat
16 = Wheel diameter, inches
95 = Load index e.g. 95 is equivalent to 690 kg
H = Speed code letter

Speed code letter:
Q = up to 160 km/h
S = up to 180 km/h
T = up to 190 km/h
H = up to 210 km/h
V = up to 240 km/h
W = up to 270 km/h

Tyre pressure
Check the pressure of cold tyres at least every 14 days and before any long journey. Do not forget the spare wheel. This also applies to vehicles with tyre pressure monitoring system.
Unscrew the valve cap.
Tyre pressure 308 and on the label on the front left or right door frame. The tyre pressure data refers to cold tyres. It applies to summer and winter tyres.
Always inflate the spare tyre to the pressure specified for full load.
The ECO tyre pressure serves to achieve the smallest amount of fuel consumption possible.
Incorrect tyre pressures will impair safety, vehicle handling, comfort and fuel economy and will increase tyre wear.

Tyre pressures differ depending on various options. For the correct tyre pressure value, follow the procedure below:
1. Identify the body style.
2. Identify the engine identifier code. Engine data 291.
3. Identify the respective tyre.
The tyre pressure tables show all possible tyre combinations 308.
For the tyres approved for your vehicle, refer to the EEC Certificate of Conformity provided with your vehicle or other national registration documents.
The driver is responsible for correct adjustment of tyre pressure.

⚠️ Warning
If the pressure is too low, this can result in considerable tyre warm-up and internal damage, leading to tread separation and even to tyre blow-out at high speeds.

If the tyre pressure must be reduced or increased on a vehicle with tyre pressure monitoring system, switch off ignition.

Tyre pressure monitoring system
The tyre pressure monitoring system checks the pressure of all four wheels once a minute when vehicle speed exceeds a certain limit.

Caution
Tyre pressure monitoring system warns only about low tyre pressure condition and does not replace regular tyre maintenance by the driver.

All wheels must be equipped with pressure sensors and the tyres must have the prescribed pressure.
Note
In countries where the tyre pressure monitoring system is legally required, the use of wheels without pressure sensors will invalidate the vehicle type approval.

The current tyre pressures can be shown in the Vehicle Information Menu in the Driver Information Centre.

The menu can be selected by the buttons on the turn signal lever.

Press the MENU button to select the Vehicle Information Menu.

Turn the adjuster wheel to select the tyre pressure monitoring system. System status and pressure warnings are displayed by a message with the corresponding tyre flashing in the Driver Information Centre.

A detected low tyre pressure condition is indicated by the control indicator. If illuminates, stop as soon as possible and inflate the tyres as recommended.

After inflating, driving may be required to update the tyre pressure values in the DIC. During this time may illuminate.

If illuminates at lower temperatures and extinguishes after some driving, this could be an indicator for getting low pressure. Check tyre pressure.

Vehicle messages.
If the tyre pressure must be reduced or increased, switch off ignition. Only mount wheels with pressure sensors, otherwise the tyre pressure will not be displayed and "w" illuminates continuously.

A spare wheel or temporary spare wheel is not equipped with pressure sensors. The tyre pressure monitoring system is not operational for these wheels. Control indicator "w" illuminates. For the further three wheels the system remains operational.

The use of commercially available liquid tyre repair kits can impair the function of the system. Factory-approved repair kits can be used.

External high-power radio equipment could disrupt the tyre pressure monitoring system.

Each time the tyres are replaced, tyre pressure monitoring system sensors must be dismounted and serviced. For the screwed sensor: replace valve core and sealing ring. For clipped sensor: replace complete valve stem.

Vehicle loading status
Adjust tyre pressure to load condition according to tyre information label or tyre pressure chart 308, and select the relevant setting in the menu Tire Load in the Driver Information Centre, Vehicle Information Menu 121.

Select:
- Light for comfort pressure up to 3 people
- Eco for Eco pressure up to 3 people
- Max for full loading

Auto learn function
After changing wheels, the vehicle must be stationary for approx. 20 minutes, before the system recalculates. The following relearn process takes up to 10 minutes of driving with a minimum speed of 20 km/h. In this case, "w" can be displayed or pressure values can swap in the Driver Information Centre.

If problems occur during the relearn process, a warning message is displayed in the Driver Information Centre.

Temperature dependency
Tyre pressure depends on the temperature of the tyre. During driving, tyre temperature and pressure increase.

The tyre pressure value displayed in the Driver Information Centre shows the actual tyre pressure. Therefore it is important to check tyre pressure with cold tyres.
Tread depth
Check tread depth at regular intervals.
Tyres should be replaced for safety reasons at a tread depth of 2-3 mm (4 mm for winter tyres).
For safety reasons it is recommended that the tread depth of the tyres on one axle should not vary by more than 2 mm.

The legally permissible minimum tread depth (1.6 mm) has been reached when the tread has worn down as far as one of the tread wear indicators (TWI). Their position is indicated by markings on the sidewall.

If there is more wear at the front than the rear, swap round front wheels and rear wheels periodically. Ensure that the direction of rotation of the wheels is the same as before.

Tyres age, even if they are not used. We recommend tyre replacement every 6 years.

Changing tyre and wheel size
If tyres of a different size than those fitted at the factory are used, it may be necessary to reprogramme the speedometer as well as the nominal tyre pressure and make other vehicle modifications.

After converting to a different tyre size, have the label with tyre pressures replaced.

⚠️ Warning
Use of unsuitable tyres or wheels may lead to accidents and will invalidate the vehicle type approval.

Wheel covers
Wheel covers and tyres that are factory approved for the respective vehicle and comply with all of the relevant wheel and tyre combination requirements must be used.

If the wheel covers and tyres used are not factory approved, the tyres must not have a rim protection ridge.

Wheel covers must not impair brake cooling.

⚠️ Warning
Use of unsuitable tyres or wheel covers could lead to sudden pressure loss and thereby accidents.
Vehicles with steel wheels: When using locking wheel nuts, the wheel covers might not be attached to the steel wheels.

**Tyre chains**

Use tyre chains only on front wheels.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Warning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Damage may lead to tyre blowout.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**5-door hatchback, 4-door notchback, Sports tourer**

Always use fine mesh chains that add no more than 10 mm to the tyre tread and the inboard sides (including chain lock).

Tyre chains are only permitted on tyres of size 205/60 R 16 and 215/50 R 17.

**3-door hatchback**

Tyre chains are permitted on tyres of size 225/55 R 17. Always use fine mesh chains that add no more than 10 mm to the tyre tread and the inboard sides (including chain lock).

Tyre chains are also permitted on tyres of size 245/45 R 18. Always use fine mesh chains that add no more than 7 mm to the tyre tread and the inboard sides (including chain lock).

**OPC Version**

Tyre chains are permitted on tyres of size 235/45 R 18. Always use fine mesh chains that add no more than 10 mm to the tyre tread and the inboard sides (including chain lock).

**General**

The use of tyre chains is not permitted on the temporary spare wheel.

**Tyre repair kit**

Minor damage to the tyre tread can be repaired with the tyre repair kit.

Do not remove foreign bodies from the tyres.

Tyre damage exceeding 4 mm or that is at tyre's sidewall cannot be repaired with the tyre repair kit.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Warning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Do not drive faster than 80 km/h.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do not use for a lengthy period.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Steering and handling may be affected.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

If you have a flat tyre:
Apply the parking brake and engage first gear, reverse gear or P.
The tyre repair kit is in a compartment under the floor cover in the load compartment or, on version with rear carrier system, in the drawer under the passenger seat 64.

The illustrations show different versions.

1. Take the tyre repair kit from the compartment.
2. Remove the compressor.

3. Remove the electrical connection cable and air hose from the stowage compartments on the underside of the compressor.

4. Screw the compressor air hose to the connection on the sealant bottle.
5. Fit the sealant bottle into the retainer on the compressor.
    Set the compressor near the tyre in such a way that the sealant bottle is upright.
6. Unscrew valve cap from defective tyre.
7. Screw the filler hose to the tyre valve.
8. The switch on the compressor must be set to O.
9. Connect the compressor plug to the power outlet or cigarette lighter socket.
   To avoid discharging the battery, we recommend running the engine.
10. Set the rocker switch on the compressor to I. The tyre is filled with sealant.
11. The compressor pressure gauge briefly indicates up to 6 bar whilst the sealant bottle is emptying (approx. 30 seconds). Then the pressure starts to drop.
12. All of the sealant is pumped into the tyre. Then the tyre is inflated.
13. The prescribed tyre pressure should be obtained within 10 minutes. Tyre pressure \(\geq 308\). When the correct pressure is obtained, switch off the compressor.

If the prescribed tyre pressure is not obtained within 10 minutes, remove the tyre repair kit. Move the vehicle one tyre rotation. Reattach the tyre repair kit and continue the filling procedure for 10 minutes. If the prescribed tyre pressure is still not obtained, the tyre is too badly damaged. Seek the assistance of a workshop.

Drain excess tyre pressure with the button over the pressure indicator.

Do not run the compressor longer than 10 minutes.
14. Detach the tyre repair kit. Push catch on bracket to remove sealant bottle from bracket. Screw the tyre inflation hose to the free connection of the sealant bottle. This prevents sealant from escaping. Stow tyre repair kit in load compartment.

15. Remove any excess sealant using a cloth.

16. Take the label indicating maximum permitted speed from the sealant bottle and affix in the driver's field of view.

17. Continue driving immediately so that sealant is evenly distributed in the tyre. After driving approx. 10 km (but no more than 10 minutes), stop and check tyre pressure. Screw compressor air hose directly onto tyre valve and compressor when doing this.

If tyre pressure is more than 1.3 bar, set it to the correct value. Repeat the procedure until there is no more loss of pressure.

If the tyre pressure has fallen below 1.3 bar, the vehicle must not be used. Seek the assistance of a workshop.

18. Stow away tyre repair kit in load compartment.

**Note**
The driving characteristics of the repaired tyre are severely affected, therefore have this tyre replaced.

If unusual noise is heard or the compressor becomes hot, turn compressor off for at least 30 minutes.

The built-in safety valve opens at a pressure of 7 bar.

Note the expiry date of the kit. After this date its sealing capability is no longer guaranteed. Pay attention to storage information on sealant bottle.

Replace the used sealant bottle. Dispose of the bottle as prescribed by applicable laws.

The compressor and sealant can be used from approx. -30 °C.

The adapters supplied can be used to pump up other items e.g. footballs, air mattresses, inflatable dinghies etc. They are located on the underside of the compressor. To remove, screw on compressor air hose and withdraw adapter.

**Wheel changing**

Some vehicles are equipped with a tyre repair kit instead of a spare wheel 264.
Make the following preparations and observe the following information:

- Park the vehicle on a level, firm and non-skid surface. The front wheels must be in the straight-ahead position.
- Apply the parking brake and engage first gear, reverse gear or P.
- Remove the spare wheel.
- Never change more than one wheel at once.
- Use the jack only to change wheels in case of puncture, not for seasonal winter or summer tyre change.
- If the ground on which the vehicle is standing is soft, a solid board (max. 1 cm thick) should be placed under the jack.
- Take heavy objects out of the vehicle before jacking up.
- No people or animals may be in the vehicle when it is jacked-up.
- Never crawl under a jacked-up vehicle.

Do not start the vehicle when it is raised on the jack.

Clean wheel nuts and thread with a clean cloth before mounting the wheel.

**Warning**

Do not grease wheel bolt, wheel nut and wheel nut cone.

1. Disengage wheel nut caps with a screwdriver and remove. Pull off the wheel cover with the hook. Vehicle tools 257.

Alloy wheels: Disengage wheel nut caps with a screwdriver and remove. To protect the wheel, place a soft cloth between the screwdriver and the alloy wheel.

1. Disengage wheel nut caps with a screwdriver and remove. Pull off the wheel cover with the hook. Vehicle tools 257.

Alloy wheels with centre wheel bolt cap: Disengage centre cap by inserting and pulling the extractor in the recess of the brand emblem, vehicle tools 257.

2. Two types of jacks and wheel nut wrenches are possible depending on the version, vehicle tools 257.

**Variant 1a with rigid wheel wrench:**
Install the wheel wrench ensuring that it locates securely and loosen each wheel nut by half a turn.

Variants 1b, 2 and 3 with foldable wheel wrench:

Fold out the wheel wrench and install ensuring that it locates securely and loosen each wheel nut by half a turn.

The wheels might be protected by locking wheel nuts. To loosen these specific nuts first attach the key adapter onto the head of the nut before installing the wheel wrench. The key adapter is located in the glovebox.

Some versions have sill panellings with covered vehicle jacking points: pull out the cover at the respective jacking point firstly.

4. 3-door / 5-door hatchback and 4-door notchback, jack variants 1a, 1b and 3, ² 257:
Set the jack to the necessary height. Position it directly below the jacking point in a manner that prevents it from slipping.

Attach jack handle and with the jack correctly aligned rotate handle until wheel is clear of the ground.

**Sports Tourer, jack variant 2, 257:**

Set the jack to the necessary height. Position it directly below the jacking point in a manner that prevents it from slipping.

Attach wheel wrench and with the jack correctly aligned rotate wheel wrench until wheel is clear of the ground.

5. Unscrew the wheel nuts.
7. Screw on the wheel nuts.
8. Lower the vehicle and remove jack.
9. Install the wheel wrench ensuring that it locates securely and tighten each nut in a crosswise sequence. Tightening torque is 140 Nm.
10. Align the valve hole in the wheel cover with the tyre valve before installing.
   Install wheel nut caps.
   Install centre cap on alloy wheels.
11. Install vehicle jacking point cover on versions with sill panelling.
12. Stow the replaced wheel, the vehicle tools, the key adapter.
13. Check the tyre pressure of the installed tyre and the wheel nut torque as soon as possible.
    Have the defective tyre renewed or repaired as soon as possible.

### Jacking position for lifting platform

**Rear arm position of the lifting platform centrically under the recess of the sill.**

*Front arm position of the lifting platform at the underbody.*

### Spare wheel

Some vehicles are equipped with a tyre repair kit instead of a spare wheel.

If mounting a spare wheel, which is different from the other wheels, this wheel might be classified as a temporary spare wheel and the corresponding speed limits apply, even though no label indicates this. Seek the assistance of a workshop to check the applicable speed limit.
The spare wheel has always a steel rim.

**Caution**

The use of a spare wheel that is smaller than the other wheels or in combination with winter tyres could affect driveability. Have the defective tyre replaced as soon as possible.

The spare wheel is located in the load compartment beneath the floor covering. It is secured with a wing nut.

To remove:

1. Open the floor cover.
2. Only 3-door hatchback: remove rear storage by pressing both buttons. Fold down cover and extract storage upwards.
3. The spare wheel is secured with a wing nut. Untwist nut, remove conus (only 3-door hatchback) to take out the spare wheel.

Under the spare wheel there is the box with vehicle tools.

4. When, after a wheel change, no wheel is placed in the spare wheel well, secure the tool box by turning right back the wing nut and close floor cover.

**Stowing a damaged full size wheel in the load compartment, 3-door and 5-door hatchback**

The spare wheel well is not designed for other tyre sizes than the spare wheel. A damaged full size wheel must be stowed in the load compartment and secured with a strap. Vehicle tools 257. To secure the wheel:

1. Position the wheel outside up close to one sidewall of the load compartment.
2. Place the loop end of the strap through the front lashing eye on the appropriate side.

3. Place the hook end of the strap through the loop and pull it until the strap is fastened securely to the lashing eye.

4. Insert the strap through the spokes of the wheel as shown in the illustration.

5. Mount the hook to the rear lashing eye.

6. Tighten the strap and secure it using the buckle.

---

**Danger**

Always drive with folded up and engaged rear seat backrests when stowing a damaged full size wheel in the load compartment.

---

Stowing a damaged full size wheel in the spare wheel well, Sports Tourer and 4-door notchback

Vehicles equipped with a full size spare wheel:

A damaged full size wheel must be stowed outside up in the spare wheel well secured with the wing nut.

The floor cover can be placed on the projecting wheel.
Vehicles equipped with a temporary spare wheel:
Secure a damaged full size wheel outside up with the wing nut in the spare wheel well after exchanging the thread bolt by an extension bolt, placed in the tool bag 257. To replace the bolt:

1. Install the hexagon key of the wheel wrench ensuring that it locates securely on the bolt.
2. Turn the wheel wrench anticlockwise to loosen the bolt. Remove the bolt.
3. Take the extension bolt from the tool bag 257 and screw it in hand-tight using the hexagon key of the wheel wrench.
4. Store the tool box and the damaged wheel outside up in the spare wheel well and secure it by turning the wing nut clockwise on the bolt.

The floor cover can be placed on the projecting wheel.
Replace the extension bolt with the short bolt before placing the temporary spare wheel in the well after renewing or repairing the defective wheel.

Stowing the spare wheel back in the well after replacing the damaged wheel
1. Open the floor cover, untwist and remove wing nut.
   Only 3-door hatchback: open floor cover, remove rear storage, untwist and remove wing nut and conus.
2. Only Sports tourer and 4-door notchback with temporary spare wheel: replace the extension bolt with the short bolt by using the hexagon key of the wheel wrench.
3. Place the tools in the tool box or the tool bag 257.
4. Place spare wheel outside up in the wheel well and secure by turning the wing nut right back.
Only 3-door hatchback: position the excentric conus in the recess of the spare wheel before turning the wing nut right back.

5. Close floor cover and insert rear storage (only 3-door hatchback).

**Warning**

Storing a jack, a wheel or other equipment in the load compartment could cause injury if they are not fixed properly. During a sudden stop or a collision, loose equipment could strike someone.

Store jack and tools always in the respective storage compartments and secure them by fixing. Damaged wheel placed in the load compartment must always be secured by the strap.

**Temporary spare wheel**

**Caution**

The use of a spare wheel that is smaller than the other wheels or in combination with winter tyres could affect driveability. Have the defective tyre replaced as soon as possible.

Only mount one temporary spare wheel. Do not drive faster than 80 km/h. Take curves slowly. Do not use for a long period of time.

If your vehicle gets a flat tyre on the rear while towing another vehicle, mount the temporary spare wheel in the front and the full tyre in the rear.

**Directional tyres**

Fit directional tyres such that they roll in the direction of travel. The rolling direction is indicated by a symbol (e.g. an arrow) on the sidewall.

The following applies to tyres fitted opposing the rolling direction:

- Driveability may be affected. Have the defective tyre renewed or repaired as soon as possible.
- Drive particularly carefully on wet and snow-covered road surfaces.

Tyre chains  264.
Jump starting

Do not start with quick charger.
A vehicle with a discharged vehicle battery can be started using jump leads and the vehicle battery of another vehicle.

⚠️ Warning

Be extremely careful when starting with jump leads. Any deviation from the following instructions can lead to injuries or damage caused by battery explosion or damage to the electrical systems of both vehicles.

Avoid contact of the battery with eyes, skin, fabrics and painted surfaces. The fluid contains sulphuric acid which can cause injuries and damage in the event of direct contact.

⚠️ Warning

Never expose the vehicle battery to naked flames or sparks.
A discharged vehicle battery can already freeze at a temperature of 0 °C. Defrost the frozen vehicle battery before connecting jump leads.
Wear eye protection and protective clothing when handling a vehicle battery.
Use a booster vehicle battery with the same voltage (12 Volts). Its capacity (Ah) must not be much less than that of the discharged vehicle battery.
Use jump leads with insulated terminals and a cross section of at least 16 mm² (25 mm² for diesel engines).
Do not disconnect the discharged vehicle battery from the vehicle.
Switch off all unnecessary electrical consumers.
Do not lean over the vehicle battery during jump starting.

Do not allow the terminals of one lead to touch those of the other lead.
The vehicles must not come into contact with each other during the jump starting process.
Apply the parking brake, transmission in neutral, automatic transmission in P.
Open the positive terminal protection caps of both vehicle batteries.
Lead connection order:
1. Connect the red lead to the positive terminal of the booster vehicle battery.
2. Connect the other end of the red lead to the positive terminal of the discharged vehicle battery.
3. Connect the black lead to the negative terminal of the booster vehicle battery.
4. Connect the other end of the black lead to a vehicle grounding point, such as the engine block or an engine mounting bolt. Connect as far away from the discharged vehicle battery as possible, however at least 60 cm.

Route the leads so that they cannot catch on rotating parts in the engine compartment.

To start the engine:
1. Start the engine of the vehicle providing the jump.
2. After 5 minutes, start the other engine. Start attempts should be made for no longer than 15 seconds at an interval of 1 minute.
3. Allow both engines to idle for approx. 3 minutes with the leads connected.
4. Switch on electrical consumers (e.g. headlights, heated rear window) of the vehicle receiving the jump start.
5. Reverse above sequence exactly when removing leads.

Towing
Towing the vehicle

Insert a screwdriver in the slot at the lower part of the cap. Release the cap by carefully moving the screwdriver downwards.
The towing eye is stowed with the vehicle tools 257.
Screw in the towing eye as far as it will go until it stops in a horizontal position.

Attach a tow rope – or better still a tow rod – to the towing eye.

The towing eye must only be used for towing and not for recovering the vehicle.

Switch on ignition to release steering wheel lock and to permit operation of brake lights, horn and windscreen wiper.

Transmission in neutral.

**Caution**

Drive slowly. Do not drive jerkily. Excessive tractive force can damage the vehicle.

When the engine is not running, considerably more force is needed to brake and steer.

To prevent the entry of exhaust gases from the towing vehicle, switch on the air recirculation and close the windows.

Vehicles with automatic transmission: The vehicle must be towed facing forwards, not faster than 80 km/h nor further than 100 km. In all other cases and when the transmission is defective, the front axle must be raised off the ground.

Seek the assistance of a workshop.

After towing, unscrew the towing eye. Insert cap at the top and engage downwards.

**Towing another vehicle**

Insert a screwdriver in the slot at the lower bend of the cap. Release the cap by carefully moving the screwdriver downwards.

The towing eye is stowed with the vehicle tools 257.
Screw in the towing eye as far as it will go until it stops in a horizontal position.

The lashing eye at the rear underneath the vehicle must never be used as a towing eye.

Attach a tow rope – or even better a tow bar – to the towing eye.

The towing eye must only be used for towing and not for recovering a vehicle.

**Caution**

Drive slowly. Do not drive jerkily. Excessive tractive force can damage the vehicle.

After towing, unscrew the towing eye. Insert cap at the top and engage downwards.

**Appearance care**

**Exterior care**

**Locks**

The locks are lubricated at the factory using a high quality lock cylinder grease. Use de-icing agent only when absolutely necessary, as this has a degreasing effect and impairs lock function. After using a de-icing agent, have the locks regreased by a workshop.

**Washing**

The paintwork of your vehicle is exposed to environmental influences. Wash and wax your vehicle regularly. When using automatic vehicle washes, select a programme that includes waxing.

Bird droppings, dead insects, resin, pollen and the like should be cleaned off immediately, as they contain aggressive constituents which can cause paint damage.
Vehicle care

If using a vehicle wash, comply with the vehicle wash manufacturer's instructions. The windscreen wiper and rear window wiper must be switched off. Remove antenna and external accessories such as roof racks etc.

If you wash your vehicle by hand, make sure that the insides of the wheel housings are also thoroughly rinsed out.

Clean edges and folds on opened doors and the bonnet as well as the areas they cover.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Caution</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Always use a cleaning agent with a pH value of 4 to 9.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do not use cleaning agents on hot surfaces.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Have the door hinges of all doors greased by a workshop.
Do not clean the engine compartment with a steam-jet or high-pressure jet cleaner.

On vehicles with emblem touchpad: when cleaning with a high-pressure jet cleaner ensure a minimum distance of 30 cm when working around the tailgate to prevent unintended unlocking.

Thoroughly rinse and leather-off the vehicle. Rinse leather frequently. Use separate leathers for painted and glass surfaces: remnants of wax on the windows will impair vision.

Do not use hard objects to remove spots of tar. Use tar removal spray on painted surfaces.

**Exterior lights**
Headlight and other light covers are made of plastic. Do not use any abrasive or caustic agents, do not use an ice scraper, and do not clean them dry.

**Polishing and waxing**
Wax the vehicle regularly (at the latest when water no longer beads). Otherwise, the paintwork will dry out.

Polishing is necessary only if the paint has become dull or if solid deposits have become attached to it.

Paintwork polish with silicone forms a protective film, making waxing unnecessary.

Plastic body parts must not be treated with wax or polishing agents.

**Windows and windscreen wiper blades**
Use a soft lint-free cloth or chamois leather together with window cleaner and insect remover.

When cleaning the rear window from inside, always wipe in parallel to the heating element to prevent damage.

For mechanical removal of ice, use a sharp-edged ice scraper. Press the scraper firmly against the glass so that no dirt can get under it and scratch the glass.

Clean smearing wiper blades with a soft cloth and window cleaner.
Sunroof
Never clean with solvents or abrasive agents, fuels, aggressive media (e.g. paint cleaner, acetone-containing solutions etc.), acidic or highly alkaline media or abrasive pads. Do not apply wax or polishing agents to the sunroof.

Glass panel
Never clean with solvents or abrasive agents, fuels, aggressive media (e.g. paint cleaner, acetone-containing solutions etc.), acidic or highly alkaline media or abrasive pads. Do not apply wax or polishing agents to the glass panel.

Wheels and tyres
Do not use high-pressure jet cleaners.
Clean rims with a pH-neutral wheel cleaner.
Rims are painted and can be treated with the same agents as the body.

Paintwork damage
Rectify minor paintwork damage with a touch-up pen before rust forms. Have more extensive damage or rust areas repaired by a workshop.

Underbody
Some areas of the vehicle underbody have a PVC undercoating while other critical areas have a durable protective wax coating.
After the underbody is washed, check the underbody and have it waxed if necessary.
Bitumen/rubber materials could damage the PVC coating. Have underbody work carried out by a workshop.
Before and after winter, wash the underbody and have the protective wax coating checked.

Liquid gas system

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>![Danger]</th>
<th>Liquid gas is heavier than air and can collect in sink points. Take care when performing work at the underbody in a pit.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

For painting work and when using a drying booth at a temperature above 60 °C, the liquid gas tank must be removed.
Do not make any modifications to the liquid gas system.

Towing equipment
Do not clean the coupling ball bar with a steam-jet or high-pressure jet cleaner.

Rear carrier system
Clean the rear carrier system with a steam-jet or high-pressure jet cleaner at least once a year.
Operate the rear carrier system periodically if not in regular use, in particular during winter.
Air shutter
Clean the shutter system in the front bumper to maintain correct functionality.

Interior care

Interior and upholstery
Only clean the vehicle interior, including the instrument panel fascia and panelling, with a dry cloth or interior cleaner.
Clean the leather upholstery with clear water and a soft cloth. In case of heavy soiling, use leather care.
The instrument cluster and the displays should only be cleaned using a soft damp cloth. If necessary use a weak soap solution.
Clean fabric upholstery with a vacuum cleaner and brush. Remove stains with an upholstery cleaner.
Clothing fabrics may not be colourfast. This could cause visible discolorations, especially on light-coloured upholstery. Removable stains and discolorations should be cleaned as soon as possible.
Clean seat belts with lukewarm water or interior cleaner.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Caution</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Close Velcro fasteners as open Velcro fasteners on clothing could damage seat upholstery. The same applies to clothing with sharp-edged objects, like zips or belts or studded jeans.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Plastic and rubber parts
Plastic and rubber parts can be cleaned with the same cleaner as used to clean the body. Use interior cleaner if necessary. Do not use any other agent. Avoid solvents and petrol in particular. Do not use high-pressure jet cleaners.
Service and maintenance

General information

Service information
In order to ensure economical and safe vehicle operation and to maintain the value of your vehicle, it is of vital importance that all maintenance work is carried out at the proper intervals as specified.

The detailed, up-to-date service schedule for your vehicle is available at the workshop.

Service display 112.

European service intervals
Maintenance of your vehicle is required every 30,000 km or after 1 year, whichever occurs first, unless otherwise indicated in the service display.

The European service intervals are valid for the following countries:
Andorra, Austria, Belgium, Bosnia-Herzegovina, Bulgaria, Croatia, Cyprus, Czech Republic, Denmark, Estonia, Finland, France, Germany, Greece, Greenland, Hungary, Iceland, Ireland, Italy, Latvia, Lithuania, Luxembourg, Macedonia, Malta, Montenegro, Netherlands, Norway, Poland, Portugal, Romania, Serbia, Slovakia, Slovenia, Spain, Sweden, Switzerland, United Kingdom.

Service display 112.

International service intervals
Maintenance of your vehicle is required every 15,000 km or after 1 year, whichever occurs first, unless otherwise indicated in the service display.

The international service intervals are valid for the countries which are not listed in the European service intervals.

Service display 112.

Confirmations
Confirmation of service is recorded in the Service and Warranty Booklet. The date and mileage is completed with the stamp and signature of the servicing workshop.
Make sure that the Service and Warranty Booklet is completed correctly as continuous proof of service is essential if any warranty or goodwill claims are to be met, and is also a benefit when selling the vehicle.

**Service interval with remaining engine oil life duration**
The service interval is based on several parameters depending on usage.
The service display lets you know when to change the engine oil.
Service display 112.

---

### Recommended fluids, lubricants and parts

#### Recommended fluids and lubricants
Only use products that meet the recommended specifications. Damage resulting from the use of products not in line with these specifications will not be covered by the warranty.

#### Warning
Operating materials are hazardous and could be poisonous. Handle with care. Pay attention to information given on the containers.

#### Engine oil
Engine oil is identified by its quality and its viscosity. Quality is more important than viscosity when selecting which engine oil to use. The oil quality ensures e.g. engine cleanliness, wear protection and oil aging control, whereas viscosity grade gives information on the oil’s thickness over a temperature range.

Dexos is the newest engine oil quality that provides optimum protection for gasoline and diesel engines. If it is unavailable, engine oils of other listed qualities must be used. Recommendations for gasoline engines are also valid for Compressed Natural Gas (CNG), Liquified Petroleum Gas (LPG) and Ethanol (E85) fuelled engines.

Select the appropriate engine oil based on its quality and on the minimum ambient temperature 288.

#### Topping up engine oil
Engine oils of different manufacturers and brands can be mixed as long as they comply with the required engine oil quality and viscosity. Use of engine oil with only ACEA A1/B1 or only A5/B5 quality is prohibited, since it can cause long-term engine damage under certain operating conditions.
Select the appropriate engine oil based on its quality and on the minimum ambient temperature

**Additional engine oil additives**
The use of additional engine oil additives could cause damage and invalidate the warranty.

**Engine oil viscosity grades**
The SAE viscosity grade gives information of the thickness of the oil. Multigrade oil is indicated by two figures, e.g. SAE 5W-30. The first figure, followed by a W, indicates the low temperature viscosity and the second figure the high temperature viscosity.

Select the appropriate viscosity grade depending on the minimum ambient temperature

All of the recommended viscosity grades are suitable for high ambient temperatures.

---

**Coolant and antifreeze**
Use only organic acid type-long life coolant (LLC) antifreeze approved for the vehicle. Consult a workshop.

The system is factory filled with coolant designed for excellent corrosion protection and frost protection down to approx. -28 °C. In northern countries with very low temperatures the factory filled coolant provides frost protection down to approx. -37°C. This concentration should be maintained all year round.

The use of additional coolant additives that intend to give additional corrosion protection or seal against minor leaks can cause function problems. Liability for consequences resulting from the use of additional coolant additives will be rejected.

**Brake and clutch fluid**
Over time, brake fluid absorbs moisture which will reduce braking effectiveness. The brake fluid should therefore be replaced at the specified interval.
Technical data

Vehicle identification ............... 286
Vehicle data ............................ 288

Vehicle identification

Vehicle Identification Number

The Vehicle Identification Number is visible through the windscreen.

Identification plate

The identification plate is located on the front left door frame.
Information on identification label:

1 = Manufacturer
2 = Type approval number
3 = Vehicle Identification Number
4 = Permissible gross vehicle weight rating in kg
5 = Permissible gross train weight in kg
6 = Maximum permissible front axle load in kg
7 = Maximum permissible rear axle load in kg
8 = Vehicle-specific or country-specific data

The combined total of front and rear axle loads must not exceed the permissible gross vehicle weight. For example, if the front axle is bearing its maximum permissible load, the rear axle can only bear a load that is equal to the gross vehicle weight minus the front axle load.

The technical data is determined in accordance with European Community standards. We reserve the right to make modifications.

Specifications in the vehicle documents always have priority over those given in this manual.

**Engine identification**

The technical data tables show the engine identifier code. Engine data 🇪🇺 291.

To identify the respective engine, refer to the engine power in the EEC Certificate of Conformity provided with your vehicle or other national registration documents.
## Vehicle data
### Recommended fluids and lubricants

#### European service schedule

**Required engine oil quality**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Engine oil quality</th>
<th>All European countries (except Belarus, Moldova, Russia, Turkey)</th>
<th>Only Israel</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Petrol engines (including CNG, LPG, E85)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Diesel engines (including CNG, LPG, E85)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dexos 1</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>✔</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>–</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>–</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>–</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

In case dexos quality is unavailable you may use max. 1 litre engine oil quality ACEA C3 once between each oil change.

**Engine oil viscosity grades**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Ambient temperature</th>
<th>All European countries and Israel (except Belarus, Moldova, Russia, Turkey)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>down to -25 °C</td>
<td>SAE 5W-30 or SAE 5W-40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>below -25 °C</td>
<td>SAE 0W-30 or SAE 0W-40</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## International service schedule

### Required engine oil quality

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Engine oil quality</th>
<th>Petrol engines (including CNG, LPG, E85)</th>
<th>Diesel engines</th>
<th>Petrol engines (including CNG, LPG, E85)</th>
<th>Diesel engines</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>dexos 1</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dexos 2</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>☑</td>
<td>☑</td>
<td>☑</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

In case dexos quality is unavailable you may use the oil qualities listed below:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Engine oil quality</th>
<th>Petrol engines (including CNG, LPG, E85)</th>
<th>Diesel engines</th>
<th>Petrol engines (including CNG, LPG, E85)</th>
<th>Diesel engines</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>GM-LL-A-025</td>
<td>☑</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>☑</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GM-LL-B-025</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>☑</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Technical data

#### Engine oil quality

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Engine oil quality</th>
<th>Petrol engines (including CNG, LPG, E85)</th>
<th>Diesel engines</th>
<th>Petrol engines (including CNG, LPG, E85)</th>
<th>Diesel engines</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ACEA A3/B3</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ACEA A3/B4</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ACEA C3</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>API SM</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>API SN resource conserving</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Engine oil viscosity grades

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Ambient temperature</th>
<th>Petrol and diesel engines</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>down to -25 °C</td>
<td>SAE 5W-30 or SAE 5W-40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>below -25 °C</td>
<td>SAE 0W-30 or SAE 0W-40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>down to -20 °C</td>
<td>SAE 10W-30&lt;sup&gt;1)&lt;/sup&gt; or SAE 10W-40&lt;sup&gt;1)&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<sup>1)</sup> Permitted, but usage of SAE 5W-30 or SAE 5W-40 with dexos quality is recommended.
### Engine data

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sales designation</th>
<th>1.4</th>
<th>1.4</th>
<th>1.4</th>
<th>1.4</th>
<th>1.6</th>
<th>1.6</th>
<th>1.6</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>A14XEL</td>
<td>A14XER</td>
<td>A14NEL</td>
<td>A14NET</td>
<td>LPG</td>
<td>A16XER</td>
<td>A16LET</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Number of cylinders</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Piston displacement [cm(^3)]</td>
<td>1398</td>
<td>1398</td>
<td>1364</td>
<td>1364</td>
<td>1598</td>
<td>1598</td>
<td>1598</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Engine power [kW]</td>
<td>64</td>
<td>74</td>
<td>88</td>
<td>103</td>
<td>85</td>
<td>132</td>
<td>125</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>at rpm</td>
<td>6000</td>
<td>6000</td>
<td>4200-6000</td>
<td>4900-6000</td>
<td>6000</td>
<td>5500</td>
<td>6000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Torque [Nm]</td>
<td>130</td>
<td>130</td>
<td>200</td>
<td>200</td>
<td>155</td>
<td>230</td>
<td>260</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>at rpm</td>
<td>4000</td>
<td>4000</td>
<td>1850-4200</td>
<td>1850-4900</td>
<td>4000</td>
<td>2200</td>
<td>1650-3200</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fuel type</td>
<td>Petrol</td>
<td>Petrol</td>
<td>Petrol</td>
<td>Petrol/LPG</td>
<td>Petrol</td>
<td>Petrol</td>
<td>Petrol</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Octane rating RON</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>recommended</td>
<td>95</td>
<td>95</td>
<td>95</td>
<td>95</td>
<td>95</td>
<td>95</td>
<td>95</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>possible</td>
<td>98</td>
<td>98</td>
<td>98</td>
<td>98</td>
<td>98</td>
<td>98</td>
<td>98</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>possible</td>
<td>91</td>
<td>91</td>
<td>91</td>
<td>91</td>
<td>91</td>
<td>91</td>
<td>91</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gas</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>LPG</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Engine oil consumption [l/1000 km](^2)</td>
<td>0.6</td>
<td>0.6</td>
<td>0.6</td>
<td>0.6</td>
<td>0.6</td>
<td>0.6</td>
<td>0.6</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

\(^2\) Maximum value.
### Technical data

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sales designation</th>
<th>Engine identifier code</th>
<th>Number of cylinders</th>
<th>Piston displacement [cm³]</th>
<th>Engine power [kW] at rpm</th>
<th>Torque [Nm] at rpm</th>
<th>Fuel type</th>
<th>Octane rating RON</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1.6 OPC</td>
<td>A16SHT</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>1598</td>
<td>147, 5500</td>
<td>280, 1650-3500</td>
<td>Petrol</td>
<td>98, 98</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.8 OPC</td>
<td>A18XER</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>1796</td>
<td>103, 6300</td>
<td>175, 3800</td>
<td>Petrol</td>
<td>95, 95</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.0 OPC</td>
<td>A20NFT</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>1998</td>
<td>206, 5300</td>
<td>400, 2400-4800</td>
<td>Petrol</td>
<td>98, 98</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.3 OPC</td>
<td>A13DTE</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>1248</td>
<td>70, 4000</td>
<td>190, 1750-3250</td>
<td>Diesel</td>
<td>98, 98</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.6 OPC</td>
<td>B16DTH</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>1598</td>
<td>100, 3500-4000</td>
<td>320, 2000</td>
<td>Diesel</td>
<td>74, 74</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.7 OPC</td>
<td>A17DTN</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>1686</td>
<td>74, 4000</td>
<td>260, 1750-2500</td>
<td>Diesel</td>
<td>81, 81</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.7 OPC</td>
<td>A17DTC</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>1686</td>
<td>81, 4000</td>
<td>280, 1750-2500</td>
<td>Diesel</td>
<td>81, 81</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Octane rating RON

- **recommended**: 98, 95, 98
- **possible**: 95, 98, 95
- **possible**: 91, 91, 91

**Engine oil consumption [l/1000 km]**

- 0.6, 0.6, 0.6, 0.6, 0.6, 0.6, 0.6

3) Maximum value.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sales designation</th>
<th>1.7</th>
<th>1.7</th>
<th>1.7</th>
<th>2.0 Turbo</th>
<th>2.0 Turbo</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Engine identifier code</td>
<td>A17DTE</td>
<td>A17DTF</td>
<td>A17DTS</td>
<td>A20DTH</td>
<td>A20DTR</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Number of cylinders</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Piston displacement [cm³]</td>
<td>1686</td>
<td>1686</td>
<td>1686</td>
<td>1956</td>
<td>1956</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Engine power [kW] at rpm</td>
<td>81</td>
<td>96</td>
<td>96</td>
<td>121</td>
<td>143</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Torque [Nm] at rpm</td>
<td>280</td>
<td>300</td>
<td>300</td>
<td>350</td>
<td>400</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fuel type</td>
<td>Diesel</td>
<td>Diesel</td>
<td>Diesel</td>
<td>Diesel</td>
<td>Diesel</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Engine oil consumption [l/1000 km]²</td>
<td>0.6</td>
<td>0.6</td>
<td>0.6</td>
<td>0.6</td>
<td>0.6</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

² Maximum value.
### Performance

#### 3-door hatchback

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Engine</th>
<th>A14XER</th>
<th>A14NEL</th>
<th>A14NET</th>
<th>A16LET</th>
<th>A16XHT</th>
<th>A16SHT</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Maximum speed</strong>&lt;sup&gt;4)&lt;/sup&gt; [km/h]</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manual transmission</td>
<td>178&lt;sup&gt;5)&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>192</td>
<td>201</td>
<td>220</td>
<td>219</td>
<td>230</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Automatic transmission</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>200</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>210</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<sup>4</sup> The maximum speed indicated is achievable at kerb weight (without driver) plus 200 kg payload. Optional equipment could reduce the specified maximum speed of the vehicle.

<sup>5</sup> 4th gear.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Engine</th>
<th>A18XER</th>
<th>A20NFT</th>
<th>A17DTE</th>
<th>A17DTC</th>
<th>A17DTF</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Maximum speed</strong>&lt;sup&gt;4)&lt;/sup&gt; [km/h]</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manual transmission</td>
<td>200</td>
<td>250</td>
<td>183</td>
<td>182</td>
<td>197</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Automatic transmission</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<sup>4</sup> The maximum speed indicated is achievable at kerb weight (without driver) plus 200 kg payload. Optional equipment could reduce the specified maximum speed of the vehicle.
### Engine

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Engine</th>
<th>A17DTS</th>
<th>A20DTH</th>
<th>A20DTR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Maximum speed</strong> (^4) [km/h]</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manual transmission</td>
<td>196</td>
<td>210</td>
<td>225</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Automatic transmission</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>207</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

\(^4\) The maximum speed indicated is achievable at kerb weight (without driver) plus 200 kg payload. Optional equipment could reduce the specified maximum speed of the vehicle.

### 5-door hatchback

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Engine</th>
<th>A14XEL</th>
<th>A14XER</th>
<th>A14NEL</th>
<th>A14NET</th>
<th>A16LET</th>
<th>A16XER</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Maximum speed</strong> (^4) [km/h]</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manual transmission</td>
<td>168(^5)</td>
<td>178(^5)</td>
<td>192</td>
<td>202</td>
<td>221</td>
<td>188</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Automatic transmission</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>200</td>
<td>211</td>
<td>182</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

\(^4\) The maximum speed indicated is achievable at kerb weight (without driver) plus 200 kg payload. Optional equipment could reduce the specified maximum speed of the vehicle.

\(^5\) 4th gear.
### Technical data

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Engine</th>
<th>A16XHT</th>
<th>A13DTE</th>
<th>B16DTH</th>
<th>A17DTE</th>
<th>A17DTC</th>
<th>A17DTF</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Maximum speed</strong> [km/h]</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manual transmission</td>
<td>220</td>
<td>175</td>
<td>200</td>
<td>188</td>
<td>186</td>
<td>201</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Automatic transmission</td>
<td>212</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4) The maximum speed indicated is achievable at kerb weight (without driver) plus 200 kg payload. Optional equipment could reduce the specified maximum speed of the vehicle.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Engine</th>
<th>A17DTS</th>
<th>A20DTH</th>
<th>A20DTR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Maximum speed</strong> [km/h]</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manual transmission</td>
<td>198</td>
<td>215</td>
<td>226</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Automatic transmission</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>209</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4) The maximum speed indicated is achievable at kerb weight (without driver) plus 200 kg payload. Optional equipment could reduce the specified maximum speed of the vehicle.
### 4-door notchback

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Engine</th>
<th>A14XER</th>
<th>A14NET</th>
<th>A16LET</th>
<th>A16XER</th>
<th>A16XHT</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Maximum speed</strong> [km/h]</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manual transmission</td>
<td>183(^5)</td>
<td>207</td>
<td>223</td>
<td>193</td>
<td>222</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Automatic transmission</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>205</td>
<td>213</td>
<td>185</td>
<td>215</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4) The maximum speed indicated is achievable at kerb weight (without driver) plus 200 kg payload. Optional equipment could reduce the specified maximum speed of the vehicle.

5) 4th gear.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Engine</th>
<th>A13DTE</th>
<th>B16DTH</th>
<th>A17DTE</th>
<th>A17DTC</th>
<th>A17DTF</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Maximum speed</strong> [km/h]</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manual transmission</td>
<td>180</td>
<td>205</td>
<td>191</td>
<td>188</td>
<td>206</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Automatic transmission</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4) The maximum speed indicated is achievable at kerb weight (without driver) plus 200 kg payload. Optional equipment could reduce the specified maximum speed of the vehicle.
### Technical data

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Engine</th>
<th>A17DTS</th>
<th>A20DTH</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Maximum speed</strong> [km/h]</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manual transmission</td>
<td>203</td>
<td>215</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Automatic transmission</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>209</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4) The maximum speed indicated is achievable at kerb weight (without driver) plus 200 kg payload. Optional equipment could reduce the specified maximum speed of the vehicle.

### Sports tourer

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Engine</th>
<th>A14XER</th>
<th>A14NEL</th>
<th>A14NET</th>
<th>A16LET</th>
<th>A16XER</th>
<th>A16XHT</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Maximum speed</strong> [km/h]</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manual transmission</td>
<td>175</td>
<td>190</td>
<td>200</td>
<td>220</td>
<td>185</td>
<td>220</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Automatic transmission</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>198</td>
<td>210</td>
<td>180</td>
<td>211</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4) The maximum speed indicated is achievable at kerb weight (without driver) plus 200 kg payload. Optional equipment could reduce the specified maximum speed of the vehicle.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Engine</th>
<th>A13DTE</th>
<th>B16DTH</th>
<th>A17DTN</th>
<th>A17DTE</th>
<th>A17DTF</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Maximum speed 4) [km/h]</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manual transmission</td>
<td>174</td>
<td>200</td>
<td>182</td>
<td>186</td>
<td>198</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Automatic transmission</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4) The maximum speed indicated is achievable at kerb weight (without driver) plus 200 kg payload. Optional equipment could reduce the specified maximum speed of the vehicle.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Engine</th>
<th>A17DTC</th>
<th>A17DTS</th>
<th>A20DTH</th>
<th>A20DTR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Maximum speed 4) [km/h]</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manual transmission</td>
<td>184</td>
<td>195</td>
<td>212</td>
<td>224</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Automatic transmission</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>207</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4) The maximum speed indicated is achievable at kerb weight (without driver) plus 200 kg payload. Optional equipment could reduce the specified maximum speed of the vehicle.
## Vehicle weight

**Kerb weight, basic model without any optional equipment**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>3-door hatchback</th>
<th>Engine</th>
<th>Manual transmission</th>
<th>Automatic transmission</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>with air conditioning</td>
<td>A14XER</td>
<td>1393</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[kg]</td>
<td>A14NEL</td>
<td>1437</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>A14NET</td>
<td>1437</td>
<td>1471</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>A16LET</td>
<td>1471</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>A16XHT</td>
<td>1503</td>
<td>1503</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>A16SHT</td>
<td>1503</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>A18XER</td>
<td>1437</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>A20NFT</td>
<td>1550</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>A20DTH</td>
<td>1550</td>
<td>1571</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>A17DTE</td>
<td>1503</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>A17DTS</td>
<td>1503</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>with air conditioning</td>
<td>A17DTC</td>
<td>1503</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[kg]</td>
<td>A17DTF</td>
<td>1503</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>A20DTH</td>
<td>1550</td>
<td>1571</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>A20DTR</td>
<td>1571</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5-door hatchback</td>
<td>Engine</td>
<td>Manual transmission</td>
<td>Automatic transmission</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------------</td>
<td>-----------</td>
<td>---------------------</td>
<td>------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>without/with air conditioning [kg]</td>
<td>A14XEL</td>
<td>1373/1388</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>A14XER</td>
<td>1373/1388</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>A14NEL</td>
<td>1393/1408</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>A14NET</td>
<td>1393/1408</td>
<td>–/1453</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>A14NET LPG</td>
<td>1503/1518</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>A16LET</td>
<td>–/1490</td>
<td>–/1503</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>A16XER</td>
<td>1393/1408</td>
<td>–/1443</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>A16XHT</td>
<td>–/1503</td>
<td>–/1503</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>A13DTE</td>
<td>1393/1408</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## 5-door hatchback with/without air conditioning [kg]

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Engine</th>
<th>Manual transmission</th>
<th>Automatic transmission</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>B16DTH</td>
<td>–/1503</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A17DTC</td>
<td>1503/1518</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A17DTE</td>
<td>1503/1518</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A17DTF</td>
<td>1503/1518</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A17DTS</td>
<td>1503/1518</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A20DTH</td>
<td>1503/1518</td>
<td>–/1590</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A20DTR</td>
<td>1571</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Kerb weight, basic model without any optional equipment

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>4-door notchback</th>
<th>Engine</th>
<th>Manual transmission</th>
<th>Automatic transmission</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>without/with air conditioning [kg]</td>
<td>A14XER</td>
<td>1393/1405</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>A14NET</td>
<td>1437/1449</td>
<td>1483</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>A16LET</td>
<td>–/1471</td>
<td>1503</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>A16XER</td>
<td>1393/1405</td>
<td>1449</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>A16XHT</td>
<td>–/1503</td>
<td>1503</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>A13DTE</td>
<td>1471/1483</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>B16DTH</td>
<td>–/1503</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>A17DTE</td>
<td>1503/1515</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>A17DTC</td>
<td>1503/1515</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>without/with air conditioning [kg]</td>
<td>A17DTF</td>
<td>1503/1515</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>A17DTS</td>
<td>1503/1515</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Kerb weight, basic model without any optional equipment

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sports tourer</th>
<th>Engine</th>
<th>Manual transmission</th>
<th>Automatic transmission</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>without/with air conditioning [kg]</td>
<td>A14XER</td>
<td>1393/1408</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>A14NEL</td>
<td>1437/1452</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>A14NET</td>
<td>1437/1452</td>
<td>–/1503</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>A14NET LPG</td>
<td>1503/1518</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>A16LET</td>
<td>–/1503</td>
<td>–/1550</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>A16XER</td>
<td>1437/1452</td>
<td>–/1503</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>A16XHT</td>
<td>–/1550</td>
<td>–/1571</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>A13DTE</td>
<td>1471/1486</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>B16DTH</td>
<td>1503/1518</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>A17DTE</td>
<td>1550/1565</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>A17DTN</td>
<td>1550/1565</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>A17DTF</td>
<td>1550/1565</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Sports tourer

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Engine</th>
<th>Manual transmission</th>
<th>Automatic transmission</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A17DTC</td>
<td>1550/1565</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A17DTS</td>
<td>1550/1565</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A20DTH</td>
<td>1550/1565</td>
<td>–/1613</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A20DTR</td>
<td>–/1613</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Optional equipment and accessories increase the kerb weight.

Loading information ◇ 100.

### Vehicle dimensions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>3-door hatchback</th>
<th>5-door hatchback</th>
<th>4-door notchback</th>
<th>Sports tourer</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Length [mm]</td>
<td>4466</td>
<td>4419</td>
<td>4658</td>
<td>4698</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Width without exterior mirrors [mm]</td>
<td>1840</td>
<td>1814</td>
<td>1814</td>
<td>1814</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Width with two exterior mirrors [mm]</td>
<td>2020</td>
<td>2013</td>
<td>2013</td>
<td>2013</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Height (without antenna) [mm]</td>
<td>1482</td>
<td>1510</td>
<td>1500</td>
<td>1535</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Length of load compartment floor [mm]</td>
<td>855</td>
<td>836</td>
<td>1084</td>
<td>1069</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Length of load compartment with folded rear seats [mm]</td>
<td>1617</td>
<td>1549</td>
<td>1778</td>
<td>1835</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Load compartment width [mm]</td>
<td>980</td>
<td>1027</td>
<td>976</td>
<td>1026</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Load compartment height [mm]</td>
<td>512</td>
<td>554</td>
<td>546</td>
<td>721</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Technical data

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>3-door hatchback</th>
<th>5-door hatchback</th>
<th>4-door notchback</th>
<th>Sports tourer</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Wheelbase [mm]</strong></td>
<td>2695</td>
<td>2685</td>
<td>2685</td>
<td>2685</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Turning circle diameter [m]</strong></td>
<td>11.4</td>
<td>11.5</td>
<td>11.5</td>
<td>11.5</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Capacities

### Engine oil

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Engine</th>
<th>A14XEL, A14XER</th>
<th>A14NEL, A14NET</th>
<th>A16LET, A16XER</th>
<th>A16XHT</th>
<th>A18XER</th>
<th>A20NFT</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>including Filter [l]</td>
<td>4.0</td>
<td>4.0</td>
<td>4.5</td>
<td>5.5</td>
<td>4.5</td>
<td>6.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>between MIN and MAX [l]</td>
<td>1.0</td>
<td>1.0</td>
<td>1.0</td>
<td>1.0</td>
<td>1.0</td>
<td>1.0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Engine</th>
<th>A13DTE ecoFlex</th>
<th>B16DTH</th>
<th>A17DTE, A17DTC</th>
<th>A17DTF, A17DTS</th>
<th>A20DTH, A20DTR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>including Filter [l]</td>
<td>3.5</td>
<td>5.4</td>
<td>5.4</td>
<td>4.5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>between MIN and MAX [l]</td>
<td>1.0</td>
<td>1.0</td>
<td>1.0</td>
<td>1.0</td>
<td>1.0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Fuel tank

- **Petrol/diesel, refilling quantity [l]**: 56<sup>6)</sup>
- **LPG, refilling quantity [l]**: 34<sup>7)</sup>

<sup>6)</sup> A13 DTE diesel engine with stop-start system reduced refilling quantity: 46 litres.

<sup>7)</sup> Sports tourer: 33 litres.
Tyre pressures
Tyre pressures differ depending on the model variant. The order of the listed car models is as follows:
- 3-door hatchback
- 5-door hatchback, 4-door notchback, Sports tourer
Refer to the table header to find the correct tyre pressure for your model.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Engine</th>
<th>Tyres</th>
<th>Comfort with up to 3 people</th>
<th>ECO with up to 3 people</th>
<th>With full load</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>front [kPa/bar] (psi)</td>
<td>rear [kPa/bar] (psi)</td>
<td>front [kPa/bar] (psi)</td>
<td>rear [kPa/bar] (psi)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A14XER, A18XER</td>
<td>225/55 R17, 235/45 R19, 235/50 R18, 235/55 R17, 245/45 R18</td>
<td>210/2.1 (30)</td>
<td>210/2.1 (30)</td>
<td>250/2.5 (36)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## 3-door hatchback

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Engine</th>
<th>Tyres</th>
<th>Comfort with up to 3 people</th>
<th>ECO with up to 3 people</th>
<th>With full load</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>front [kPa/bar] (psi)</td>
<td>rear [kPa/bar] (psi)</td>
<td>front [kPa/bar] (psi)</td>
<td>rear [kPa/bar] (psi)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A14NEL,</td>
<td>225/55 R17, 210/2.1 (30)</td>
<td>210/2.1 (30)</td>
<td>270/2.7 (39)</td>
<td>220/2.2 (32)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A14NET</td>
<td>235/45 R19, 235/50 R18,</td>
<td>235/55 R17, 245/40 R20,</td>
<td>250/2.5 (36)</td>
<td>260/2.6 (38)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>245/45 R18</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A16LET</td>
<td>225/55 R17, 210/2.1 (30)</td>
<td>210/2.1 (30)</td>
<td>220/2.2 (32)</td>
<td>260/2.6 (38)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>235/45 R19, 235/50 R18,</td>
<td>235/55 R17, 245/40 R20,</td>
<td>250/2.5 (36)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>245/45 R18</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A17DTE</td>
<td>225/55 R17, 210/2.1 (30)</td>
<td>210/2.1 (30)</td>
<td>220/2.2 (32)</td>
<td>260/2.6 (38)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>245/45 R18</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Technical data

### 3-door hatchback

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Engine</th>
<th>Tyres</th>
<th>Comfort with up to 3 people</th>
<th>ECO with up to 3 people</th>
<th>With full load</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>front [kPa/bar] [psi]</td>
<td>front [kPa/bar] [psi]</td>
<td>front [kPa/bar] [psi]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>rear [kPa/bar] [psi]</td>
<td>rear [kPa/bar] [psi]</td>
<td>rear [kPa/bar] [psi]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A17DTF, A17DTS, A17DTC</td>
<td>225/55 R17, 235/55 R19, 235/50 R18, 235/55 R17, 245/40 R20, 245/45 R18</td>
<td>210/2.1 (30) 210/2.1 (30)</td>
<td>260/2.6 (38) 260/2.6 (38)</td>
<td>220/2.2 (32) 260/2.6 (38)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A16XHT, A16SHT, A20DTH, A20DTR</td>
<td>225/55 R17, 235/55 R19, 235/50 R18, 235/55 R17, 245/40 R20, 245/45 R18</td>
<td>230/2.3 (33) 230/2.3 (33)</td>
<td>270/2.7 (39) 270/2.7 (39)</td>
<td>240/2.4 (35) 280/2.8 (41)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A20NFT</td>
<td>235/45 R18, 245/40 R19,</td>
<td>240/2.4 (35) 240/2.4 (35)</td>
<td>– –</td>
<td>260/2.6 (38) 300/3.0 (43)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### 3-door hatchback

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Model</th>
<th>Engine</th>
<th>Tyres</th>
<th>Comfort with up to 3 people</th>
<th>ECO with up to 3 people</th>
<th>With full load</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>front</td>
<td>rear</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>[kPa/bar] ([psi])</td>
<td>[kPa/bar] ([psi])</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>front</td>
<td>270/2.7 (39)</td>
<td>250/2.5 (36)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>rear</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3-door</td>
<td>245/35</td>
<td>270/2.7 (39)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>280/2.8 (41)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hatchback</td>
<td>R20</td>
<td>250/2.5 (36)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>310/3.1 (44)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>All</td>
<td>Temporary spare wheel</td>
<td>420/4.2 (61)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>420/4.2 (61)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 5-door hatchback, 4-door notchback, Sports tourer

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Model</th>
<th>Engine</th>
<th>Tyres</th>
<th>Comfort with up to 3 people</th>
<th>ECO with up to 3 people</th>
<th>With full load</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>front</td>
<td>rear</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>[kPa/bar] ([psi])</td>
<td>[kPa/bar] ([psi])</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>front</td>
<td>220/2.2 (32)</td>
<td>270/2.7 (39)</td>
<td>230/2.3 (33)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>rear</td>
<td>220/2.2 (32)</td>
<td>270/2.7 (39)</td>
<td>270/2.7 (39)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5-door</td>
<td>A14XER,</td>
<td>205/55 R16,</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hatchback</td>
<td>A14XEL</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>205/60 R16,</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>215/50 R17,</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>215/60R16,</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>225/45 R17</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Technical data

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>5-door hatchback, 4-door notchback, Sports tourer</th>
<th>Comfort with up to 3 people</th>
<th>ECO with up to 3 people</th>
<th>With full load</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Engine</td>
<td>front [kPa/bar] (psi)</td>
<td>rear [kPa/bar] (psi)</td>
<td>front [kPa/bar] (psi)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A14NET, A14NET LPG, A14NEL, A16XER</td>
<td>205/55 R16,</td>
<td>220/2.2 (32)</td>
<td>220/2.2 (32)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Engine</td>
<td>Tyres</td>
<td>Comfort with up to 3 people front (kPa/bar)</td>
<td>Comfort with up to 3 people rear (kPa/bar)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------</td>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>---------------------------------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A16LET</td>
<td>205/60 R16,</td>
<td>230/2.3 (33)</td>
<td>230/2.3 (33)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>215/60 R16,</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>215/50 R17</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>225/50 R17,</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>235/45 R18</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>235/40 R19</td>
<td>240/2.4 (35)</td>
<td>220/2.2 (32)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>205/60 R16,</td>
<td>250/2.5 (36)</td>
<td>230/2.3 (33)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A13DTE</td>
<td>205/60 R16,</td>
<td>220/2.2 (32)</td>
<td>220/2.2 (32)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>215/50 R17,</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>215/60 R16</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Technical data

### 5-door hatchback, 4-door notchback, Sports tourer

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Engine</th>
<th>Tyres</th>
<th>Comfort with up to 3 people</th>
<th>ECO with up to 3 people</th>
<th>With full load</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>front [kPa/bar] (psi)</td>
<td>front [kPa/bar] (psi)</td>
<td>front [kPa/bar] (psi)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B16DTH</td>
<td>205/60 R16, 215/50 R17, 215/60 R16, 225/50 R17, 235/40 R19, 235/45 R18</td>
<td>230/2.3 (33)</td>
<td>270/2.7 (39)</td>
<td>240/2.4 (35)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>rear [kPa/bar] (psi)</td>
<td>rear [kPa/bar] (psi)</td>
<td>rear [kPa/bar] (psi)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>230/2.3 (33)</td>
<td>270/2.7 (39)</td>
<td>280/2.8 (41)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>


<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Engine</th>
<th>Tyres</th>
<th>Comfort with up to 3 people</th>
<th>ECO with up to 3 people</th>
<th>With full load</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>front [kPa/bar] (psi)</td>
<td>rear [kPa/bar] (psi)</td>
<td>front [kPa/bar] (psi)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A17DTC,</td>
<td>205/65 R16,</td>
<td>230/2.3 (33)</td>
<td>270/2.7 (39)</td>
<td>240/2.4 (35)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A17DTS</td>
<td>215/60 R16,</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>215/50 R17,</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>225/50 R17,</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>225/45 R17,</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>235/45 R18</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>205/55 R16,</td>
<td>240/2.4 (35)</td>
<td>270/2.7 (39)</td>
<td>250/2.5 (36)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>235/40 R19</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>205/60 R16</td>
<td>250/2.5 (36)</td>
<td>270/2.7 (39)</td>
<td>260/2.6 (38)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Engine</td>
<td>Tyres</td>
<td>Comfort with up to 3 people</td>
<td>ECO with up to 3 people</td>
<td>With full load</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------------</td>
<td>---------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------</td>
<td>----------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>front [kPa/bar]</td>
<td>rear [kPa/bar]</td>
<td>front [kPa/bar]</td>
<td>rear [kPa/bar]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>[psi]</td>
<td>[psi]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5-door hatchback, 4-door notchback, Sports tourer</td>
<td>205/65 R16,</td>
<td>230/2.3 (33)</td>
<td>230/2.3 (33)</td>
<td>270/2.7 (39)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A16XHT, A17DTE, A17DTF, A17DTN</td>
<td>215/60 R16,</td>
<td>230/2.3 (33)</td>
<td>230/2.3 (33)</td>
<td>270/2.7 (39)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>225/45 R17,</td>
<td>270/2.7 (39)</td>
<td>270/2.7 (39)</td>
<td>240/2.4 (35)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>215/50 R17,</td>
<td>270/2.7 (39)</td>
<td>270/2.7 (39)</td>
<td>240/2.4 (35)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>225/50 R17,</td>
<td>270/2.7 (39)</td>
<td>270/2.7 (39)</td>
<td>240/2.4 (35)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>235/45 R18,</td>
<td>270/2.7 (39)</td>
<td>270/2.7 (39)</td>
<td>240/2.4 (35)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>205/55 R16,</td>
<td>240/2.4 (35)</td>
<td>220/2.2 (32)</td>
<td>270/2.7 (39)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>230/3.0 (43)</td>
<td>270/2.7 (39)</td>
<td>270/2.7 (39)</td>
<td>260/2.6 (38)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>235/40 R19,</td>
<td>250/2.5 (36)</td>
<td>230/2.3 (33)</td>
<td>270/2.7 (39)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>205/60 R16</td>
<td>250/2.5 (36)</td>
<td>230/2.3 (33)</td>
<td>270/2.7 (39)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Engine</td>
<td>Tyres</td>
<td>Comfort with up to 3 people</td>
<td>ECO with up to 3 people</td>
<td>With full load</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------</td>
<td>----------------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------</td>
<td>----------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>front [kPa/bar] [psi]</td>
<td>rear [kPa/bar] [psi]</td>
<td>front [kPa/bar] [psi]</td>
<td>rear [kPa/bar] [psi]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A20DTH</td>
<td>205/65 R16,</td>
<td>230/2.3 (33)</td>
<td>270/2.7 (39)</td>
<td>240/2.4 (35)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>215/60 R16,</td>
<td>230/2.3 (33)</td>
<td>270/2.7 (39)</td>
<td>280/2.8 (41)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>215/50 R17,</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>225/50 R17,</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>235/45 R18</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>235/40 R19</td>
<td>240/2.4 (35)</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>250/2.5 (36)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>220/2.2 (32)</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>290/2.9 (42)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>205/60 R16,</td>
<td>250/2.5 (36)</td>
<td>270/2.7 (39)</td>
<td>260/2.6 (38)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>230/2.3 (33)</td>
<td>270/2.7 (39)</td>
<td>300/3.0 (43)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A20DTR</td>
<td>215/50 R17,</td>
<td>250/2.5 (36)</td>
<td>270/2.7 (39)</td>
<td>260/2.6 (38)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>230/2.3 (33)</td>
<td>270/2.7 (39)</td>
<td>290/2.9 (42)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>235/45 R18</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Technical data

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Engine</th>
<th>Tyres</th>
<th>Comfort with up to 3 people</th>
<th>ECO with up to 3 people</th>
<th>With full load</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>front [kPa/bar] ([psi])</td>
<td>front [kPa/bar] ([psi])</td>
<td>front [kPa/bar] ([psi])</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5-door hatchback, 4-door notchback, Sports tourer</td>
<td>235/40 R19</td>
<td>270/2.7 (39)</td>
<td>250/2.5 (36)</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>All</td>
<td>Temporary spare wheel</td>
<td>420/4.2 (61)</td>
<td>420/4.2 (61)</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Customer information

Customer information ................ 319
Vehicle data recording and pri-
vacy ........................................... 321

Declaration of conformity

This vehicle has systems that transmit and/or receive radio waves subject to Directive 1999/5/EC. These systems are in compliance with the essential requirements and other relevant provisions of Directive 1999/5/EC. Copies of the original Declarations of Conformity can be obtained on our website.

Radar systems
Country-specific Declarations of Conformity for radar systems are shown on the following page:
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Country</th>
<th>Model / ID</th>
<th>Approval Details</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>European Union</td>
<td>EC Directive: 1999/5/EC</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manufacturer:</td>
<td>EC Directive: 1999/5/EC</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Model / Type Designation: L2C0038TR</td>
<td>EC Directive: 1999/5/EC</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Description / Intended Use:</td>
<td>EC Directive: 1999/5/EC</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Electronically Scanned Radar (ESR),</td>
<td>EC Directive: 1999/5/EC</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a 76.5GHz adaptive cruise control system</td>
<td>EC Directive: 1999/5/EC</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>radar fitted to motor vehicles at vehicle manufacture</td>
<td>EC Directive: 1999/5/EC</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Applied Standards:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>47 CFR Part 15</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>CEPT ERC Recommendation</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>70-03</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>EN 60950</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>EN 301 091</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>European Commission Directive 2006/28/EC</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>I declare that the product referenced above is in compliance with the essential requirements and other relevant provisions of Directive 1999/5/EC, on the approximation of the laws of the member states relating to Directive 1999/5/EC.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Brazil</td>
<td>Modelo: L2C0038TR</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Este equipamento opera em caráter secundário, isto é, não tem direito a proteção contra interferência prejudicial, mesmo de estações do mesmo tipo, e não pode causar interferência a sistemas operando em caráter primário.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Indonesia</td>
<td>14785/POSTEL/2010</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1982</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jordan</td>
<td>Type Approval No.: TRC/LPD/2009/87</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Equipment Type: Low Power Device (LPD)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Malaysia</td>
<td>KELAS</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Approval #: B 05358</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Moldova</td>
<td>8526</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Morocco</td>
<td>AGREE PAR L’ANRT MAROC</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Numéro d’agrément :</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>MR 4838 ANRT 2009</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Date d’agrément : 22/5/2009</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Singapore</td>
<td>Complies with</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>IDA Standards</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>DA105753</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>South Africa</td>
<td>TA-2009/163</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>APPROVED</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>United States of America and Canada</td>
<td>Model / FCC ID: L2C0038TR IC: 3432A-0038TR</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with Industry Canada license-exempt RSS standard(s). Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Le présent appareil est conforme aux CNR d'industrie Canada applicables aux appareils radio exempts de licence. L'exploitation est autorisée aux deux conditions suivantes: (1) l'appareil ne doit pas produire de brouillage, et (2) l'utilisateur de l'appareil doit accepter tout brouillage radioélectrique subi, même si le brouillage est susceptible d'en compromettre le fonctionnement.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Note: Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment. The term “IC,” before the radio certification number only signifies that Industry Canada technical specifications were met.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Note: This equipment complies with radiation exposure limits set forth for an uncontrolled environment. This equipment should be installed and operated with minimum distance of 20 cm between the radiator and your body.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Vehicle data recording and privacy

Event data recorders

Data storage modules in the vehicle

A large number of electronic components of your vehicle contain data storage modules temporarily or permanently storing technical data about the condition of the vehicle, events and errors. In general, this technical information documents the condition of parts, modules, systems or the environment:

- Operating conditions of system components (e.g. filling levels)
- Status messages of the vehicle and its single components (e.g. number of wheel revolutions / rotational speed, deceleration, lateral acceleration)
- Dysfunctions and defects in important system components

- Vehicle reactions in particular driving situations (e.g. inflation of an airbag, activation of the stability regulation system)
- Environmental conditions (e.g. temperature)

These data are exclusively technical and help identifying and correcting errors as well as optimizing vehicle functions.

Motion profiles indicating travelled routes cannot be created with these data.

If services are used (e.g. repair works, service processes, warranty cases, quality assurance), employees of the service network (manufacturer included) are able to read out this technical information from the event and error data storage modules applying special diagnostic devices. If required, you will receive further information at these workshops. After an error has been corrected, the data are deleted from the error storage module or they are constantly overwritten.

When using the vehicle, situations may occur in which these technical data related to other information (accident report, damages on the vehicle, witness statements etc.) may be associated with a specific person - possibly, with the assistance of an expert.

Additional functions contractually agreed upon with the client (e.g. vehicle location in emergency cases) allow the transmission of particular vehicle data from the vehicle.
Radio Frequency Identification (RFID)

RFID technology is used in some vehicles for functions such as tyre pressure monitoring and ignition system security. It is also used in connection with conveniences such as radio remote controls for door locking/unlocking and starting, and in-vehicle transmitters for garage door openers. RFID technology in Opel vehicles does not use or record personal information or link with any other Opel system containing personal information.
# Index

**A**
- Accessories and vehicle modifications ................................................................. 223
- Active Emergency Braking ................................................................. 195
- Active head restraints ............................................................................. 41
- Adaptive cruise control ................................................................. 121, 184
- Adaptive forward lighting ....................................................................
  ........................................................................................................ 120, 143, 235
- Adjustable air vents ........................................................................... 160
- Advanced parking assist ..................................................................... 200
- Airbag and belt tensioners .............................................................. 115
- Airbag deactivation ........................................................................... 54, 115
- Airbag system ....................................................................................... 52
- Air conditioning regular operation ..................................................... 161
- Air conditioning system .................................................................... 154
- Air intake ............................................................................................. 161
- Air vents ............................................................................................. 160
- Antilock brake system ....................................................................... 173
- Antilock brake system (ABS) ............................................................. 117
- Anti-theft alarm system .................................................................... 31
- Anti-theft locking system ................................................................. 30
- Appearance care ................................................................................ 279
- Armrest ............................................................................................... 48, 49
- Armrest storage .................................................................................. 64
- Ashtrays ............................................................................................... 109
- Automatic anti-dazzle ....................................................................... 35
- Automatic light control ..................................................................... 141
- Automatic locking ............................................................................. 27
- Automatic transmission ...................................................................... 169
- Auxiliary heater .................................................................................. 160

**B**
- Battery discharge protection ............................................................... 151
- Battery voltage ................................................................................... 131
- Belts .................................................................................................... 49
- Bicycle rack ........................................................................................ 66
- Bonnet .................................................................................................. 225
- Brake and clutch fluid ........................................................................ 284
- Brake and clutch system ..................................................................... 116
- Brake assist ........................................................................................ 176
- Brake fluid .......................................................................................... 228
- Brakes .................................................................................................. 173, 228
- Breakdown .......................................................................................... 277
- Bulb replacement ................................................................................ 231

**C**
- Capacities ............................................................................................. 307
- Cargo management system ................................................................. 93
- Car Pass ................................................................................................. 23
- Catalytic converter .............................................................................. 169
- Central locking system ....................................................................... 25
- Centre console lighting ...................................................................... 150
- Centre console storage ........................................................................ 65
- Changing tyre and wheel size ............................................................ 263
- Charging system .................................................................................. 116
- Child locks ........................................................................................... 27
- Child restraint installation locations .................................................. 58
Child restraints.............................. 56  
Child restraint systems ................. 56  
Cigarette lighter ........................... 109  
Climate control ................................ 19  
Climate control systems .................. 153  
Clock ........................................... 107  
Code........................................... 128  
Control indicators........................... 113  
Control of the vehicle ...................... 162  
Controls...................................... 102  
Convex shape .............................. 33  
Coolant and antifreeze .................... 284  
Cruise control ................................ 121, 181  
Cupholders .................................... 62  
Curtain airbag system ...................... 54  
Curve lighting .................................. 143  

D  
Danger, Warnings and Cautions ...... 4  
Daytime running lights ...................... 143  
Declaration of conformity ................. 319  
Diesel fuel system bleeding .............. 230  
Diesel particle filter ....................... 119, 168  
Door open ..................................... 121  
Doors........................................... 28  
Driver assistance systems ............... 181  
Driver Information Centre ................. 121  
Driving characteristics and towing tips .................... 217  
Driving hints .................................. 162  

E  
Electric adjustment ....................... 33  
Electrical system ............................ 251  
Electric parking brake .................... 117, 174  
Electric parking brake fault ............. 117  
Electronic climate control system ........... 156  
Electronic driving programmes .......... 171  
Electronic Stability Control .............. 177  
Electronic Stability Control and Traction Control system ............ 118  
Electronic Stability Control off .......... 118  
End-of-life vehicle recovery .............. 224  
Engine compartment fuse box ............ 252  
Engine coolant ................................ 226  
Engine coolant temperature gauge .... 111  
Engine data .................................... 291  
Engine exhaust ................................ 168  
Engine identification ...................... 287  
Engine oil ...................................... 225, 284, 288  
Engine oil pressure ....................... 119  
Entry lighting .................................. 150  
Event data recorders ....................... 321  
Exit lighting .................................... 151  
Exterior care .................................. 279  
Exterior light .................................. 120  
Exterior lighting ............................. 16, 140  
Exterior mirrors ............................ 33  

F  
Fault ........................................... 171  
First aid ....................................... 97  
First aid kit .................................... 97  
Fixed air vents ................................ 161  
Flex-Fix system ................................ 66  
Fog light ....................................... 121  
Fog lights ...................................... 236  
Folding mirrors ................................ 33  
Following distance indication .......... 194  
Forward collision alert ................. 191  
Front airbag system ....................... 52  
Front fog lights ................................ 147  
Front seats ..................................... 42  
Front storage ................................... 63  
Front turn signal lights ................. 238  
Fuel ............................................. 210  
Fuel consumption - CO₂- Emissions .......... 216  
Fuel for diesel engines ................. 211  
Fuel for liquid gas operation ............ 211  
Fuel for petrol engines ................. 210  
Fuel gauge ..................................... 111  
Fuel selector ................................... 111  
Fuses ........................................... 251  

G  
Gauges.......................................... 110  
General information ...................... 217
Glass panel .................................. 39
Glovebox ..................................... 62
Graphic-Info-Display, Colour-
Info-Display ............................ 126

H
Halogen headlights .................... 232
Hand brake......................... 173, 174
Hazard warning flashers ......... 147
Headlight flash .......................... 142
Headlight range adjustment ...... 142
Headlights................................... 140
Headlights when driving abroad 143
Head restraint adjustment ............. 9
Head restraints ............................ 40
Heated mirrors ............................. 34
Heated rear window .............. 37
Heated steering wheel ............... 103
Heating ........................................ 48
Heating and ventilation system . 153
Height adjustable rear floor cover 90
High beam .............................. 120, 141
High beam assist ......................... 120, 141
Hill start assist .......................... 176
Horn ..................................... 17, 103

I
Identification plate ..................... 286
Ignition switch positions ............ 163
Immobiliser ............................. 32, 120
Indicators................................. 110
Information displays............... 121
Instrument cluster ...................... 110
Instrument panel fuse box ...... 254
Instrument panel illumination .... 250
Instrument panel illumination
control .................................... 149
Instrument panel overview ....... 12
Interactive driving system ........ 179
Interior care ............................. 282
Interior lighting......................... 149
Interior lights .......................... 149, 250
Interior mirrors ......................... 34
Interruption of power supply ...... 172
Introduction ............................. 3
ISOFIX child restraint systems ... 61

J
Jump starting ............................ 276

K
Key, memorised settings.......... 25
Keys ..................................... 23
Keys, locks ............................. 23
Lane departure warning ....... 118, 209
Lashing eyes .............................. 93
Lighting eyes .............................. 93
Lighting features ....................... 150
Light switch .............................. 140

Load compartment .................. 28, 84
Load compartment cover .......... 88
Load compartment fuse box ...... 255
Loading information ................. 100
Low fuel .................................. 120
Low washer fluid ...................... 121

M
Malfunction indicator light ....... 116
Manual anti-dazzle .................. 34
Manual mode .......................... 171
Manual transmission ................ 173
Manual windows ...................... 35
Memorised settings .................. 25
Mirror adjustment ................... 10
Misted light covers ................... 148

N
New vehicle running-in .......... 163
Number plate light .................. 250

O
Object detection systems ......... 197
Odometer .............................. 110
Oil, engine ............................. 284, 288
Operate pedal ......................... 117
Outside temperature ............... 106
Overrun cut-off ....................... 164
P
Parking ................................ 21, 167
Parking assist ............................ 197
Parking brake ............................ 174
Parking lights ............................. 148
Particulate filter .......................... 168
Performance .............................. 294
Performing work ........................ 224
Pollen filter ................................. 161
Power outlets ............................. 108
Power seat adjustment ................ 46
Power steering ............................ 118
Power steering fluid ..................... 227
Power windows ............................ 35
Preheating ................................. 119
Puncture ..................................... 267

Q
Quickheat................................... 160

R
Radio Frequency Identification (RFID)................................. 322
Radio remote control ................... 24
Reading lights ............................ 150
Rear carrier system ...................... 66
Rear floor storage cover .............. 90
Rear fog light .............................. 121
Rear fog lights ............................ 148
Rear seats .................................... 49
Rear storage ................................. 88
Rear view camera ........................ 204
Recommended fluids and lubricants ................. 284, 288
Reduced engine power .................. 120
Refuelling .................................. 213
Retained power off ........................ 163
Reversing lights ............................ 148
Ride control systems .................... 176
Roof ........................................... 38
Roof load ................................... 100
Roof rack ..................................... 99
S
Safety belts .................................... 49
Safety net .................................... 95
Seat adjustment ............................ 7, 42
Seat belt ..................................... 10
Seat belt reminder ........................ 115
Seat belts ..................................... 49
Seat folding .................................. 45
Seat position ................................ 42
Selector lever .............................. 170
Service ....................................... 161, 283
Service display ............................ 112
Service information ........................ 283
Service vehicle soon .................... 116
Side airbag system ....................... 53
Side blind spot alert ...................... 203
Side lights ................................... 140
Side turn signal lights ................. 248
Smartphone controller .................. 128
Spare wheel ................................. 271
Speed limiter ............................... 183
Speedometer ............................... 110
Starting and operating ................. 163
Starting off ................................... 20
Starting the engine ...................... 163
Steering ...................................... 162
Steering wheel adjustment ............ 11, 102
Steering wheel controls ............... 102
Stop-start system ......................... 165
Storage ......................................... 62
Storage compartments ................. 62
Sunroof ....................................... 38
Sunvisor lights ......................... 150
Sun visors .................................... 37
Symbols ......................................... 4
T
Tachometer .................................. 110
Tail lights .................................... 241
Three-point seat belt ................... 50
Tools .......................................... 257
Top-tether fastening eyes ............. 61
Tow bar ....................................... 217
Towing ........................................ 217, 277
Towing another vehicle .............. 278
Towing equipment ......................... 218
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Towing the vehicle</td>
<td>277</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Traction Control system</td>
<td>176</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Traction Control system off</td>
<td>119</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Traffic sign assistant</td>
<td>206</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Trailer coupling</td>
<td>217</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Trailer stability assist</td>
<td>222</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Trailer towing</td>
<td>218</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Transmission</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Transmission display</td>
<td>169</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tread depth</td>
<td>263</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Trip computer</td>
<td>132</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Trip odometer</td>
<td>110</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Turn and lane-change signals</td>
<td>147</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Turn signal</td>
<td>115</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tyre chains</td>
<td>264</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tyre designations</td>
<td>259</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tyre pressure</td>
<td>259</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tyre pressure monitoring system</td>
<td>119, 260</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tyre pressures</td>
<td>308</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tyre repair kit</td>
<td>264</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ultrasonic parking assist</td>
<td>118, 197</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Underseat storage</td>
<td>64</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Upholstery</td>
<td>282</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Upshift</td>
<td>118</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Using this manual</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vehicle battery</td>
<td>228</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vehicle checks</td>
<td>224</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vehicle data</td>
<td>288</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vehicle data recording and privacy</td>
<td>321</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vehicle detected ahead</td>
<td>121</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vehicle dimensions</td>
<td>305</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vehicle Identification Number</td>
<td>286</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vehicle jack</td>
<td>257</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vehicle messages</td>
<td>128</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vehicle personalisation</td>
<td>134</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vehicle security</td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vehicle specific data</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vehicle storage</td>
<td>223</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vehicle tools</td>
<td>257</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vehicle unlocking</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vehicle weight</td>
<td>300</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ventilation</td>
<td>153</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>W</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Warning chimes</td>
<td>131</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Warning lights</td>
<td>110</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Warning triangle</td>
<td>96</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Washer and wiper systems</td>
<td>18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Washer fluid</td>
<td>228</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wheel changing</td>
<td>267</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wheel covers</td>
<td>263</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wheels and tyres</td>
<td>259</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>